



Cisco Nexus 5000 Series NX-OS System Management Configuration Guide, Release 5.2(1)N1(3)

First Published: 2012-07-02

Last Modified: 2018-11-29

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: [www.cisco.com go trademarks](http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks). Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2012–2013 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.



CONTENTS

PREFACE

Preface	xv
Audience	xv
Document Conventions	xv
Documentation Feedback	xvi
Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request	xvii

CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Information	1
New and Changed Information	1

CHAPTER 2

Overview	3
System Management Features	3

CHAPTER 3

Configuring Switch Profiles	7
Information About Switch Profiles	7
Switch Profile Configuration Modes	8
Configuration Validation	9
Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles	10
Prerequisites for Switch Profiles	10
Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles	10
Configuring Switch Profiles	12
Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile	13
Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands	14
Importing a Switch Profile	17
Importing Configurations in a vPC Topology	19
Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile	19
Isolating a Peer Switch	20

- Deleting a Switch Profile 20
- Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile 21
- Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer 22
- Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot 23
- Switch Profile Configuration show Commands 23
- Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles 24
 - Creating a Switch Profile on a Local and Peer Switch Example 24
 - Verifying the Synchronization Status Example 27
 - Displaying the Running Configuration 27
 - Displaying the Switch Profile Synchronization Between Local and Peer Switches 28
 - Displaying Verify and Commit on Local and Peer Switches 28
 - Successful and Unsuccessful Synchronization Examples 30
 - Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer 30
 - Importing Configurations 31
 - Sample Migrations Using the Import Command 34
 - Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender A-A Topology Example 34
 - Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender Fabric Extender Straight-Through Topology Example 34

CHAPTER 4

- Configuring Module Pre-Provisioning 37**
 - Information About Module Pre-Provisioning 37
 - Guidelines and Limitations 37
 - Enabling Module Pre-Provisioning 38
 - Removing Module Pre-Provisioning 39
 - Verifying the Pre-Provisioned Configuration 39
 - Configuration Examples for Pre-Provisioning 40

CHAPTER 5

- Using Cisco Fabric Services 43**
 - Information About CFS 43
 - Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet 44
 - Guidelines and Limitations for CFS 44
 - CFS Distribution 45
 - CFS Distribution Modes 45
 - Uncoordinated Distribution 45

Coordinated Distribution	46
Unrestricted Uncoordinated Distributions	46
Disabling or Enabling CFS Distribution on a Switch	46
Verifying the CFS Distribution Status	46
CFS Distribution over IP	47
CFS Distribution over Fibre Channel	48
CFS Distribution Scopes	48
CFS Merge Support	49
CFS Support for Applications	49
CFS Application Requirements	49
Enabling CFS for an Application	50
Verifying Application Registration Status	50
Locking the Network	51
Verifying CFS Lock Status	51
Committing Changes	51
Discarding Changes	52
Saving the Configuration	52
Clearing a Locked Session	52
CFS Regions	53
About CFS Regions	53
Example Scenario	53
Managing CFS Regions	54
Creating CFS Regions	54
Assigning Applications to CFS Regions	54
Moving an Application to a Different CFS Region	55
Removing an Application from a Region	55
Deleting CFS Regions	56
Configuring CFS over IP	56
Enabling CFS over IPv4	56
Enabling CFS over IPv6	56
Verifying the CFS Over IP Configuration	57
Configuring IP Multicast Addresses for CFS over IP	57
Configuring IPv4 Multicast Address for CFS	57
Configuring IPv6 Multicast Address for CFS	58

Verifying the IP Multicast Address Configuration for CFS over IP 58

Displaying CFS Distribution Information 58

Default Settings for CFS 61

- Enabling CFS to Distribute Smart Call Home Configurations 61
- Enabling CFS to Distribute DPVM Configurations 62
- Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Domain Configurations 63
- Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Port Security Configurations 63
- Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Timer Configurations 64
- Enabling CFS to Distribute IVR Configurations 65
- Enabling CFS to Distribute NTP Configurations 66
- Enabling CFS to Distribute RADIUS Configurations 66
- Enabling CFS to Distribute RSCN Configurations 67
- Enabling CFS to Distribute TACACS+ Configurations 68

CHAPTER 6

Configuring PTP 69

- Information About PTP 69
- PTP Device Types 70
- PTP Process 71
- Clock Management 71
- High Availability for PTP 72
- Licensing Requirements for PTP 72
- Guidelines and Limitations for PTP 72
- Default Settings for PTP 72
- Configuring PTP 73
 - Configuring PTP Globally 73
 - Configuring PTP on an Interface 75
 - Verifying the PTP Configuration 76

CHAPTER 7

Configuring User Accounts and RBAC 79

- Information About User Accounts and RBAC 79
 - User Roles 79
 - Predefined SAN Admin User Role 80
 - Rules 81
 - SAN Admin Role-Feature Rule Mapping 81

User Role Policies	83
User Account Configuration Restrictions	83
User Password Requirements	84
Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts	85
Configuring User Accounts	85
Configuring SAN Admin Users	86
Configuring RBAC	87
Creating User Roles and Rules	87
Creating Feature Groups	89
Changing User Role Interface Policies	89
Changing User Role VLAN Policies	90
Changing User Role VSAN Policies	91
Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration	91
Configuring User Accounts Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC	92

CHAPTER 8

Configuring Session Manager	93
Information About Session Manager	93
Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager	93
Configuring Session Manager	94
Creating a Session	94
Configuring ACLs in a Session	94
Verifying a Session	95
Committing a Session	95
Saving a Session	95
Discarding a Session	95
Configuration Example for Session Manager	95
Verifying the Session Manager Configuration	96

CHAPTER 9

Configuring Online Diagnostics	97
Information About Online Diagnostics	97
Bootup Diagnostics	97
Health Monitoring Diagnostics	98
Expansion Module Diagnostics	98
Configuring Online Diagnostics	99

Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration	100
Default Settings for Online Diagnostics	100

CHAPTER 10

Configuring System Message Logging	101
Information About System Message Logging	101
Syslog Servers	102
Licensing Requirements for System Message Logging	102
Guidelines and Limitations for System Message Logging	102
Default Settings for System Message Logging	102
Configuring System Message Logging	103
Configuring System Message Logging to Terminal Sessions	103
Configuring System Message Logging to a File	105
Configuring Module and Facility Messages Logging	107
Configuring Logging Timestamps	108
Configuring the ACL Logging Cache	109
Applying ACL Logging to an Interface	110
Configuring the ACL Log Match Level	111
Configuring Syslog Servers	111
Configuring syslog on a UNIX or Linux System	113
Configuring syslog Server Configuration Distribution	114
Displaying and Clearing Log Files	115
Configuring DOM Logging	116
Enabling DOM Logging	116
Disabling DOM Logging	116
Verifying the DOM Logging Configuration	117
Verifying the System Message Logging Configuration	117

CHAPTER 11

Configuring Smart Call Home	119
Information About Smart Call Home	119
Smart Call Home Overview	120
Smart Call Home Destination Profiles	120
Smart Call Home Alert Groups	121
Smart Call Home Message Levels	122
Call Home Message Formats	123

Guidelines and Limitations for Smart Call Home	127
Prerequisites for Smart Call Home	127
Default Call Home Settings	127
Configuring Smart Call Home	128
Registering for Smart Call Home	128
Configuring Contact Information	128
Creating a Destination Profile	130
Modifying a Destination Profile	131
Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile	133
Adding Show Commands to an Alert Group	133
Configuring E-Mail Server Details	134
Configuring Periodic Inventory Notifications	135
Disabling Duplicate Message Throttling	136
Enabling or Disabling Smart Call Home	137
Testing the Smart Call Home Configuration	137
Verifying the Smart Call Home Configuration	138
Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Full-Text Format	138
Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format	139

CHAPTER 12
Configuring Rollback 143

Information About Rollbacks	143
Guidelines and Limitations	143
Creating a Checkpoint	144
Implementing a Rollback	145
Verifying the Rollback Configuration	145

CHAPTER 13
Configuring DNS 147

Information About DNS Client	147
Name Servers	147
DNS Operation	147
High Availability	148
Prerequisites for DNS Clients	148
Licensing Requirements for DNS Clients	148
Default Settings for DNS Clients	148

Configuring DNS Clients 148

CHAPTER 14**Configuring SNMP 151**

Information About SNMP 151

SNMP Functional Overview 151

SNMP Notifications 152

SNMPv3 152

Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, and v3 152

User-Based Security Model 153

CLI and SNMP User Synchronization 154

Group-Based SNMP Access 155

Licensing Requirements for SNMP 155

Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP 155

Default SNMP Settings 155

Configuring SNMP 156

Configuring SNMP Users 156

Enforcing SNMP Message Encryption 157

Assigning SNMPv3 Users to Multiple Roles 157

Creating SNMP Communities 157

Filtering SNMP Requests 157

Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers 158

Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers with VRFs 159

Filtering SNMP Notifications Based on a VRF 160

Configuring a Source Interface for Sending Out All SNMP Notifications 161

Configuring a Host Receiver for SNMP Notifications 161

Configuring SNMP for Inband Access 162

Enabling SNMP Notifications 163

Configuring Link Notifications 165

Disabling Link Notifications on an Interface 166

Enabling One-Time Authentication for SNMP over TCP 166

Assigning SNMP Switch Contact and Location Information 166

Configuring the Context to Network Entity Mapping 167

Disabling SNMP 168

Verifying the SNMP Configuration 168

Feature History for SNMP 168

CHAPTER 15

Configuring RMON 169

Information About RMON 169

 RMON Alarms 169

 RMON Events 170

Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON 170

Verifying the RMON Configuration 170

Default RMON Settings 171

Configuring RMON Alarms 171

Configuring RMON Events 172

CHAPTER 16

Configuring SPAN 175

Information About SPAN 175

SPAN Sources 175

Characteristics of Source Ports 176

SPAN Destinations 177

Characteristics of Destination Ports 177

Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN 177

Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session 178

Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port 178

Configuring MTU Truncation for Each SPAN Session 179

Configuring the Rate Limit for SPAN Traffic 180

Configuring Fibre Channel Destination Port 181

Configuring Source Ports 182

Configuring Source Port Channels, VSANs, or VLANs 182

Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session 183

Activating a SPAN Session 184

Suspending a SPAN Session 184

Troubleshooting SPAN session issues 185

 Troubleshooting SPAN session with large number of source ports issues 185

Displaying SPAN Information 186

CHAPTER 17

Configuring ERSPAN 187

Information About ERSPAN	187
ERSPAN Source Sessions	187
Monitored Traffic	188
ERSPAN Sources	188
Truncated ERSPAN	188
Multiple ERSPAN Sessions	189
High Availability	189
Licensing Requirements for ERSPAN	189
Prerequisites for ERSPAN	189
Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN	189
Default Settings for ERSPAN	191
Configuring ERSPAN	191
Configuring an ERSPAN Source Session	191
Configuring a Source Rate Limit for an ERSPAN Session	193
Configuring an Origin IP Address for ERSPAN Packets	195
Configuring Truncated ERSPAN	196
Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session	197
Verifying the ERSPAN Configuration	199
Configuration Examples for ERSPAN	199
Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Source Session	199
Configuration Example for an IP Address as the Source for an ERSPAN Session	200
Configuration Example for Truncated ERSPAN	200
Additional References	200
Related Documents	200

CHAPTER 18
Configuring NTP 201

Information About NTP	201
Information About the NTP Server	201
NTP as Time Server	202
Distributing NTP Using CFS	202
Clock Manager	202
High Availability	202
Licensing Requirements	202
Prerequisites for NTP	203

Guidelines and Limitations for NTP	203
Default Settings for NTP	204
Configuring NTP	204
Enabling or Disabling NTP	204
Configuring the Device as an Authoritative NTP Server	205
Configuring an NTP Server and Peer	205
Configuring NTP Authentication	207
Configuring NTP Access Restrictions	208
Configuring the NTP Source IP Address	209
Configuring the NTP Source Interface	210
Configuring NTP Logging	211
Enabling CFS Distribution for NTP	211
Committing NTP Configuration Changes	212
Discarding NTP Configuration Changes	212
Releasing the CFS Session Lock	213
Verifying the NTP Configuration	213
Configuration Examples for NTP	214



Preface

The preface contains the following sections:

- [Audience, on page xv](#)
- [Document Conventions, on page xv](#)
- [Documentation Feedback, on page xvi](#)
- [Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request, on page xvii](#)

Audience

This publication is for network administrators who configure and maintain Cisco Nexus devices and Cisco Nexus 2000 Series Fabric Extenders.

Document Conventions



Note

As part of our constant endeavor to remodel our documents to meet our customers' requirements, we have modified the manner in which we document configuration tasks. As a result of this, you may find a deviation in the style used to describe these tasks, with the newly included sections of the document following the new format.

Command descriptions use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
bold	Bold text indicates the commands and keywords that you enter literally as shown.
<i>Italic</i>	Italic text indicates arguments for which the user supplies the values.
[x]	Square brackets enclose an optional element (keyword or argument).
[x y]	Square brackets enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate an optional choice.

Convention	Description
{x y}	Braces enclosing keywords or arguments separated by a vertical bar indicate a required choice.
[x {y z}]	Nested set of square brackets or braces indicate optional or required choices within optional or required elements. Braces and a vertical bar within square brackets indicate a required choice within an optional element.
<i>variable</i>	Indicates a variable for which you supply values, in context where italics cannot be used.
string	A nonquoted set of characters. Do not use quotation marks around the string or the string will include the quotation marks.

Examples use the following conventions:

Convention	Description
<code>screen font</code>	Terminal sessions and information the switch displays are in screen font.
boldface screen font	Information you must enter is in boldface screen font.
<i>italic screen font</i>	Arguments for which you supply values are in italic screen font.
<>	Nonprinting characters, such as passwords, are in angle brackets.
[]	Default responses to system prompts are in square brackets.
!, #	An exclamation point (!) or a pound sign (#) at the beginning of a line of code indicates a comment line.

This document uses the following conventions:



Note

Means *reader take note*. Notes contain helpful suggestions or references to material not covered in the manual.



Caution

Means *reader be careful*. In this situation, you might do something that could result in equipment damage or loss of data.

Documentation Feedback

To provide technical feedback on this document, or to report an error or omission, please send your comments to: nexus5k-docfeedback@cisco.com.

We appreciate your feedback.

Obtaining Documentation and Submitting a Service Request

For information on obtaining documentation, using the Cisco Bug Search Tool (BST), submitting a service request, and gathering additional information, see [What's New in Cisco Product Documentation](#).

To receive new and revised Cisco technical content directly to your desktop, you can subscribe to the [What's New in Cisco Product Documentation RSS feed](#). RSS feeds are a free service.



CHAPTER 1

New and Changed Information

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [New and Changed Information, on page 1](#)

New and Changed Information

The following table provides an overview of the significant changes made to this configuration guide. The table does not provide an exhaustive list of all changes made to this guide or all new features in a particular release.

Table 1: New and Changed Information in Release 5.2(1)N1(1)

Feature	Description	Where Documented
Predefined SAN Admin Role	New predefined SAN admin role for RBAC	Configuring User Accounts and RBAC, on page 79
Precision Time Protocol (PTP) Support	IEEE 1588 Support for PTP	Configuring PTP, on page 69
Configuration Synchronization Enhancements	Configuration Synchronization improvements for deleting and restoring switch profile configuration.	Configuring Switch Profiles, on page 7



CHAPTER 2

Overview

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [System Management Features, on page 3](#)

System Management Features

The system management features documented in this guide are described below:

Feature	Description
Switch Profiles	<p>Configuration synchronization allows administrators to make configuration changes on one switch and have the system automatically synchronize the configuration to a peer switch. This feature eliminates misconfigurations and reduces the administrative overhead.</p> <p>The configuration synchronization mode (config-sync) allows users to create switch profiles to synchronize local and peer switch.</p>
Module Pre-Provisioning	<p>Module pre-provisioning feature allows users to pre-configure interfaces before inserting or attaching a module to a Cisco Nexus Series switch. If a module goes offline, users can also use pre-provisioning to make changes to the interface configurations for the offline module. In some vPC topologies, pre-provisioning is required for the configuration synchronization feature. Pre-provisioning allows users to synchronize the configuration for an interface that is online with one peer but offline with another peer.</p>
Cisco Fabric Services	<p>The Cisco MDS NX-OS software uses the Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) infrastructure to enable efficient database distribution and to promote device flexibility. CFS simplifies SAN provisioning by automatically distributing configuration information to all switches in a fabric.</p>

Feature	Description
Precision Time Protocol	The Precision Time Protocol (PTP) is a time synchronization protocol for nodes distributed across a network. Its hardware timestamp feature provides greater accuracy than other time synchronization protocols such as Network Time Protocol (NTP).
User Accounts and RBAC	User accounts and role-based access control (RBAC) allow you to define the rules for an assigned role. Roles restrict the authorization that the user has to access management operations. Each user role can contain multiple rules and each user can have multiple roles.
Session Manager	Session Manager allows you to create a configuration and apply it in batch mode after the configuration is reviewed and verified for accuracy and completeness.
Online Diagnostics	<p>Cisco Generic Online Diagnostics (GOLD) define a common framework for diagnostic operations across Cisco platforms. The online diagnostic framework specifies the platform-independent fault-detection architecture for centralized and distributed systems, including the common diagnostics CLI and the platform-independent fault-detection procedures for boot-up and run-time diagnostics.</p> <p>The platform-specific diagnostics provide hardware-specific fault-detection tests and allow you to take appropriate corrective action in response to diagnostic test results.</p>
System Message Logging	<p>You can use system message logging to control the destination and to filter the severity level of messages that system processes generate. You can configure logging to a terminal session, a log file, and syslog servers on remote systems.</p> <p>System message logging is based on RFC 3164. For more information about the system message format and the messages that the device generates, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS System Messages Reference</i>.</p>
Smart Call Home	Call Home provides an e-mail-based notification of critical system policies. Cisco NX-OS provides a range of message formats for optimal compatibility with pager services, standard e-mail, or XML-based automated parsing applications. You can use this feature to page a network support engineer, e-mail a Network Operations Center, or use Cisco Smart Call Home services to automatically generate a case with the Technical Assistance Center.

Feature	Description
Configuration Rollback	The configuration rollback feature allows users to take a snapshot, or user checkpoint, of the Cisco NX-OS configuration and then reapply that configuration to a switch at any point without having to reload the switch. A rollback allows any authorized administrator to apply this checkpoint configuration without requiring expert knowledge of the features configured in the checkpoint.
SNMP	The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of devices in a network.
RMON	RMON is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard monitoring specification that allows various network agents and console systems to exchange network monitoring data. Cisco NX-OS supports RMON alarms, events, and logs to monitor Cisco NX-OS devices.
SPAN	The Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) feature (sometimes called port mirroring or port monitoring) selects network traffic for analysis by a network analyzer. The network analyzer can be a Cisco SwitchProbe, a Fibre Channel Analyzer, or other Remote Monitoring (RMON) probes.

Feature	Description
ERSPAN	<p>Encapsulated remote switched port analyzer (ERSPAN) is used to transport mirrored traffic in an IP network. ERSPAN supports source ports, source VLANs, and destinations on different switches, which provide remote monitoring of multiple switches across your network. ERSPAN uses a generic routing encapsulation (GRE) tunnel to carry traffic between switches.</p> <p>ERSPAN consists of an ERSPAN source session, routable ERSPAN GRE-encapsulated traffic, and an ERSPAN destination session. You separately configure ERSPAN source sessions and destination sessions on different switches.</p> <p>To configure an ERSPAN source session on one switch, you associate a set of source ports or VLANs with a destination IP address, ERSPAN ID number, and virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) name. To configure an ERSPAN destination session on another switch, you associate the destinations with the source IP address, the ERSPAN ID number, and a VRF name.</p> <p>The ERSPAN source session copies traffic from the source ports or source VLANs and forwards the traffic using routable GRE-encapsulated packets to the ERSPAN destination session. The ERSPAN destination session switches the traffic to the destinations.</p>



CHAPTER 3

Configuring Switch Profiles

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Switch Profiles, on page 7](#)
- [Switch Profile Configuration Modes, on page 8](#)
- [Configuration Validation, on page 9](#)
- [Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Prerequisites for Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles, on page 10](#)
- [Configuring Switch Profiles, on page 12](#)
- [Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile, on page 13](#)
- [Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands, on page 14](#)
- [Importing a Switch Profile, on page 17](#)
- [Importing Configurations in a vPC Topology, on page 19](#)
- [Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile, on page 19](#)
- [Isolating a Peer Switch, on page 20](#)
- [Deleting a Switch Profile, on page 20](#)
- [Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile, on page 21](#)
- [Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer, on page 22](#)
- [Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot, on page 23](#)
- [Switch Profile Configuration show Commands, on page 23](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles, on page 24](#)

Information About Switch Profiles

Several applications require consistent configuration across Cisco Nexus Series switches in the network. For example, with a Virtual Port Channel (vPC), you must have identical configurations. Mismatched configurations can cause errors or misconfigurations that can result in service disruptions.

The configuration synchronization (config-sync) feature allows you to configure one switch profile and have the configuration be automatically synchronized to the peer switch. A switch profile provides the following benefits:

- Allows configurations to be synchronized between switches.
- Merges configurations when connectivity is established between two switches.

- Provides control of exactly which configuration gets synchronized.
- Ensures configuration consistency across peers through merge and mutual-exclusion checks.
- Provides verify and commit semantics.
- Supports configuring and synchronizing port profile configurations.
- Provides an import command to migrate existing vPC configurations to a switch profile.

Switch Profile Configuration Modes

The switch profile feature includes the following configuration modes:

- Configuration Synchronization Mode
- Switch Profile Mode
- Switch Profile Import Mode

Configuration Synchronization Mode

The configuration synchronization mode (`config-sync`) allows you to create switch profiles using the **config sync** command on the local switch that you want to use as the master. After you create the profile, you can enter the **config sync** command on the peer switch that you want to synchronize.

Switch Profile Mode

The switch profile mode allows you to add supported configuration commands to a switch profile that is later synchronized with a peer switch. Commands that you enter in the switch profile mode are buffered until you enter the **commit** command.

Switch Profile Import Mode

When you upgrade from an earlier release, you have the option to enter the **import** command to copy supported running-configuration commands to a switch profile. After entering the **import** command, the switch profile mode (`config-sync-sp`) changes to the switch profile import mode (`config-sync-sp-import`). The switch profile import mode allows you to import existing switch configurations from the running configuration and specify which commands you want to include in the switch profile.

Because different topologies require different commands that are included in a switch profile, the **import** command mode allows you to modify the imported set of commands to suit a specific topology. For example, a dual homed Fabric Extender (FEX) topology requires that most of the configuration is synchronized. In other vPC topologies, the configuration that needs to be synchronized might be a much smaller set of commands.

You need to enter the **commit** command to complete the import process and move the configuration into the switch profile. Because configuration changes are not supported during the import process, if you added new commands before entering the **commit** command, the switch profile remains unsaved and the switch remains in the switch profile import mode. You can remove the added commands or abort the import. Unsaved configurations are lost if the process is aborted. You can add new commands to the switch profile after the import is complete.

Configuration Validation

Two types of configuration validation checks can identify two types of switch profile failures:

- Mutual Exclusion Checks
- Merge Checks

Mutual Exclusion Checks

To reduce the possibility of overriding configuration settings that are included in a switch profile, mutual exclusion (mutex) checks the switch profile commands against the commands that exist on the local switch and the commands on the peer switch. A command that is included in a switch profile cannot be configured outside of the switch profile or on a peer switch. This requirement reduces the possibility that an existing command is unintentionally overwritten.

As a part of the commit process, the mutex-check occurs on both switches if the peer switch is reachable; otherwise, the mutex-check is performed locally. Configuration changes made from the configuration terminal occur only on the local switch.

If a mutex-check identifies errors, they are reported as mutex failures and they must be manually corrected.

The following exceptions apply to the mutual exclusion policy:

- Interface configuration—Port channel interfaces must be configured fully in either switch profile mode or global configuration mode.



Note

Several port channel subcommands are not configurable in switch profile mode. These commands can be configured from global configuration mode even if the port channel is created and configured in switch profile mode.

For example, the following command can only be configured in global configuration mode:

```
switchport private-vlan association trunk primary-vlan secondary-vlan
```

- Shutdown/no shutdown
- System QoS

Merge Checks

Merge checks are done on the peer switch that is receiving a configuration. The merge checks ensure that the received configuration does not conflict with the switch profile configuration that already exists on the receiving switch. The merge check occurs during the merge or commit process. Errors are reported as merge failures and must be manually corrected.

When one or both switches are reloaded and the configurations are synchronized for the first time, the merge check verifies that the switch profile configurations are identical on both switches. Differences in the switch profiles are reported as merge errors and must be manually corrected.

Software Upgrades and Downgrades with Switch Profiles

When you downgrade to an earlier release, you are prompted to remove an existing switch profile that is not supported on earlier releases.

When you upgrade from an earlier release, you have the option to move some of the running-configuration commands to a switch profile. The **import** command allows you to import relevant switch profile commands. An upgrade can occur if there are buffered configurations (uncommitted); however, the uncommitted configurations are lost.

When you perform an In Service Software Upgrade (ISSU) on one of the switches included in a switch profile, a configuration synchronization cannot occur because the peer is unreachable.

Prerequisites for Switch Profiles

Switch profiles have the following prerequisites:

- You must enable Cisco Fabric Series over IP (CFS over IP) distribution over mgmt0 on both switches by entering the **cfs ipv4 distribute** command.
- You must configure a switch profile with the same name on both peer switches by entering the **config sync** and **switch-profile** commands.
- Configure each switch as peer switch by entering the **sync-peers destination** command

Guidelines and Limitations for Switch Profiles

The Switch profile has the following guidelines and limitations:

- You can only enable configuration synchronization using the mgmt0 interface.
- Configuration synchronization is performed using the mgmt 0 interface and cannot be performed using a management SVI.
- You must configure synchronized peers with the same switch profile name.
- Commands that are qualified for a switch profile configuration are allowed to be configured in the configuration switch profile (config-sync-sp) mode.
- Supported switch profile commands relate to virtual port channel (vPC) commands. Fiber Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) commands are not supported.
- One switch profile session can be in progress at a time. Attempts to start another session will fail.
- Supported command changes made from the configuration terminal mode are blocked when a switch profile session is in progress. You should not make unsupported command changes from the configuration terminal mode when a switch profile session is in progress.
- When you enter the **commit** command and a peer switch is reachable, the configuration is applied to both peer switches or neither switch. If there is a commit failure, the commands remain in the switch profile buffer. You can then make necessary corrections and try the commit again.

- We recommend that you enable preprovisioning for all Generic Expansion Modules (GEMs) and Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender modules whose interface configurations are synchronized using the configuration synchronization feature. Follow these guidelines in Cisco Nexus Fabric Extender active/active topologies where the Fabric Extenders might not be online on one switch and its configuration is changed and synchronized on the other switch. In this scenario, if you do not enable preprovisioning, a commit fails and the configuration is rolled back on both switches.
- Once a port channel is configured using switch profile mode, it cannot be configured using global configuration (config terminal) mode.



Note Several port channel subcommands are not configurable in switch profile mode. These commands can be configured from global configuration mode even if the port channel is created and configured in switch profile mode.

For example, the following command can only be configured in global configuration mode:

```
switchport private-vlan association trunk primary-vlan secondary-vlan
```

- Shutdown and no shutdown can be configured in either global configuration mode or switch profile mode.
- If a port channel is created in global configuration mode, channel groups including member interfaces must also be created using global configuration mode.
- Port channels that are configured within switch profile mode may have members both inside and outside of a switch profile.
- If you want to import a member interface to a switch profile, the port channel including the member interface must also be present within the switch profile.

Guidelines for Synchronizing After Reboot, Connectivity Loss, or Failure

- Synchronizing configurations after vPC peer link failure— If both switches are operational when a peer link fails, the secondary switch shuts down its vPC ports. In a Fabric Extender A/A topology, the A/A Fabric Extender disconnects from the secondary switch. If the configuration is changed using a switch profile on the primary switch, configurations are not accepted on the secondary switch unless the A/A Fabric Extender is preprovisioned. When using the configuration synchronization feature, we recommend that you preprovision all A/A Fabric Extenders.
- Synchronizing configurations after mgmt0 interface connectivity loss—When mgmt0 interface connectivity is lost and configuration changes are required, apply the configuration changes on both switches using the switch profile. When connectivity to the mgmt0 interface is restored, both switches synchronize automatically.

If a configuration change is made on only one switch, a merge occurs when the mgmt0 interface comes up and the configuration is applied on the other switch.

- Synchronizing configurations when an ISSU is performed on one switch and a configuration change is made on the peer switch—In a vPC topology, configuration changes on the peer switch are not allowed when an ISSU is performed on the other switch. In topologies without vPCs, configuration changes are allowed and the switch undergoing an ISSU synchronizes new configurations when the upgrade is complete.

Configuring Switch Profiles

You can create and configure a switch profile. Enter the **switch-profile name** command in the configuration synchronization mode (config-sync).

Before you begin

You must create the switch profile with the same name on each switch and the switches must configure each other as a peer. When connectivity is established between switches with the same active switch profile, the switch profiles are synchronized.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	cfs ipv4 distribute Example: switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute switch(config)#	Enables CFS distribution between the peer switches.
Step 3	config sync Example: switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
Step 4	switch-profile name Example: switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
Step 5	sync-peers destination IP-address Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the peer switch.
Step 6	(Optional) show switch-profile name status Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status switch(config-sync-sp)#	Views the switch profile on the local switch and the peer switch information.
Step 7	exit Example:	Exits the switch profile configuration mode and returns to EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	
Step 8	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a switch profile and shows the switch profile status.

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status
Start-time: 15801 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:08 2010
End-time: 6480 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:13 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.1.1.1
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):
switch(config-sync-sp)# exit
switch#
```

Adding a Switch to a Switch Profile

Enter the **sync-peers destination** *destination IP* command in switch profile configuration mode to add the switch to a switch profile.

Follow these guidelines when adding switches:

- Switches are identified by their IP address.
- Destination IPs are the IP addresses of the switches that you want to synchronize.
- The committed switch profile is synchronized with the newly added peers (when they are online) if the peer switch is also configured with configuration synchronization.

If you want to import a member interface to a switch profile, the port channel including the member interface must also be present within the switch profile.

Before you begin

After creating a switch profile on the local switch, you must add the second switch that will be included in the synchronization.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	config sync Example: switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
Step 2	switch-profile name Example: switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
Step 3	sync-peers destination destination IP Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#	Adds a switch to the switch profile.
Step 4	exit Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits switch profile configuration mode.
Step 5	(Optional) show switch-profile peer Example: switch# show switch-profile peer	Displays the switch profile peer configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Adding or Modifying Switch Profile Commands

To modify a command in a switch profile, add the modified command to the switch profile and enter the **commit** command to apply the command and synchronize the switch profile to the peer switch if it is reachable.

Follow these guidelines when adding or modifying switch profile commands:

- Commands that are added or modified are buffered until you enter the **commit** command.
- Commands are executed in the same order in which they are buffered. If there is an order-dependency for certain commands, for example, a QoS policy must be defined before being applied, you must maintain

that order; otherwise, the commit might fail. You can use utility commands, such as the **show switch-profile name buffer** command, the **buffer-delete** command, or the **buffer-move** command, to change the buffer and correct the order of already entered commands.

Before you begin

After configuring a switch profile on the local and the peer switch, you must add and commit the supported commands to the switch profile. The commands are added to the switch profile buffer until you enter the **commit** command. The **commit** command does the following:

- Triggers the mutex check and the merge check to verify the synchronization.
- Creates a checkpoint with a rollback infrastructure.
- Applies the configuration on the local switch and the peer switch.
- Executes a rollback on all switches if there is a failure with an application on any of the switches in the switch profile.
- Deletes the checkpoint.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	config sync Example: switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
Step 2	switch-profile name Example: switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
Step 3	<i>Command argument</i> Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# interface Port-channell100 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# interface Ethernet1/1 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# channel-group 100	Adds a command to the switch profile.
Step 4	(Optional) show switch-profile name buffer Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc buffer switch(config-sync-sp)#	Displays the configuration commands in the switch profile buffer.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	verify Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# verify	Verifies the commands in the switch profile buffer.
Step 6	commit Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# commit	Saves the commands in the switch profile and synchronizes the configuration with the peer switch.
Step 7	(Optional) show switch-profile name status Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status switch(config-sync-sp)#	Displays the status of the switch profile on the local switch and the status on the peer switch.
Step 8	exit Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
Step 9	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to create a switch profile, configure a peer switch, and add commands to the switch profile.

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface port-channel100
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# interface Ethernet1/1
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# speed 1000
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# channel-group 100
switch(config-sync-sp)# verify
switch(config-sync-sp)# commit
switch(config-sync-sp)# exit
switch#
```

The following example shows an existing configuration with a defined switch profile. The second example shows how the switch profile command changed by adding the modified command to the switch profile.

```
switch# show running-config
switch-profile abc
  interface Ethernet1/1
    switchport mode trunk
```

```

switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-10

switch# config sync
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface Ethernet1/1
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 5-10
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# commit

switch# show running-config
switch-profile abc
interface Ethernet1/1
switchport mode trunk
switchport trunk allowed vlan 5-10

```

Importing a Switch Profile

You can import a switch profile based on the set of commands that you want to import. Using the configuration terminal mode, you can do the following:

- Add selected commands to the switch profile.
- Add supported commands that were specified for an interface.
- Add supported system-level commands.
- Add supported system-level commands excluding the physical interface commands.

When you import commands to a switch profile, the switch profile buffer must be empty.

If new commands are added during the import, the switch profile remains unsaved and the switch remains in the switch profile import mode. You can enter the **abort** command to stop the import. For additional information importing a switch profile, see the “Switch Profile Import Mode” section.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	config sync Example: switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
Step 2	switch-profile name Example: switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
Step 3	import {interface port/slot running-config [exclude interface ethernet]} Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# import ethernet 1/2 switch(config-sync-sp-import)#	Identifies the commands that you want to import and enters switch profile import mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <CR>—Adds selected commands. • interface—Adds the supported commands for a specified interface.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • running-config—Adds supported system-level commands. • running-config exclude interface ethernet—Adds supported system-level commands excluding the physical interface commands.
Step 4	commit Example: switch(config-sync-sp-import)# commit	Imports the commands and saves the commands to the switch profile.
Step 5	(Optional) abort Example: switch(config-sync-sp-import)# abort	Aborts the import process.
Step 6	exit Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits switch profile import mode.
Step 7	(Optional) show switch-profile Example: switch# show switch-profile	Displays the switch profile configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to import supported system-level commands excluding the Ethernet interface commands into the switch profile named sp:

```

switch(config-vlan)# conf sync
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile buffer

switch-profile : sp
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----

switch(config-sync-sp)# import running-config exclude interface ethernet
switch(config-sync-sp-import)#
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# show switch-profile buffer

switch-profile : sp

```

```

-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
3      vlan 100-299
4      vlan 300
4.1    state suspend
5      vlan 301-345
6      interface port-channel100
6.1    spanning-tree port type network
7      interface port-channel105

switch(config-sync-sp-import)#

```

Importing Configurations in a vPC Topology

You can import configurations in a two-switch vPC topology.



Note For specific information about the following steps, see the appropriate sections in this chapter.

1. Configure the switch profile with the same name on both switches.
2. Import the configurations to both switches independently.



Note Ensure that the configuration moved to the switch profile on both switches is identical; otherwise, a merge-check failure might occur.

3. Configure the switches by entering the **sync-peer destination** command.
4. Verify that the switch profiles are the same by entering the appropriate show commands.

Verifying Commands in a Switch Profile

You can verify the commands that are included in a switch profile by entering the **verify** command in switch profile mode.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	config sync Example: <pre>switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#</pre>	Enters configuration synchronization mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch-profile <i>name</i> Example: <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#</pre>	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
Step 3	verify Example: <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# verify</pre>	Verifies the commands in the switch profile buffer.
Step 4	exit Example: <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#</pre>	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
Step 5	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>switch# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Isolating a Peer Switch

You can isolate a peer switch in order to make changes to a switch profile. This process can be used when you want to block a configuration synchronization or when you want to debug configurations.

Isolating a peer switch requires that you remove the switch from the switch profile and then add the peer switch back to the switch profile.

To temporarily isolate a peer switch, follow these steps:

1. Remove a peer switch from a switch profile.
2. Make changes to the switch profile and commit the changes.
3. Enter debug commands.
4. Undo the changes that were made to the switch profile in Step 2 and commit.
5. Add the peer switch back to the switch profile.

Deleting a Switch Profile

You can delete a switch profile by selecting the **all-config** or the **local-config** option:

- **all-config**—Deletes the switch profile on both peer switches (when both are reachable). If you choose this option and one of the peers is unreachable, only the local switch profile is deleted. The **all-config** option completely deletes the switch profile on both peer switches.
- **local-config**—Deletes the switch profile on the local switch only.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	config sync Example: switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
Step 2	no switch-profile name {all-config local-config profile-only} Example: switch(config-sync)# no switch-profile abc local-config switch(config-sync-sp)#	Deletes the switch profile as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all-config—Deletes the switch profile on the local and peer switch. If the peer switch is not reachable, only the local switch profile is deleted. • local-config—Deletes the switch profile and local configuration. • profile-only—Deletes the switch profile without the local configuration.
Step 3	(Optional) copy switch-profile-config Example: switch (config-sync-sp)# copy switch-profile-config bootflash: switch (config-sync-sp)#	
Step 4	exit Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits configuration synchronization mode.
Step 5	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Deleting a Switch from a Switch Profile

You can delete a switch from a switch profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	config sync Example: switch# config sync switch(config-sync)#	Enters configuration synchronization mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch-profile <i>name</i> Example: switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)#	Configures the switch profile, names the switch profile, and enters the switch profile synchronization configuration mode.
Step 3	no sync-peers destination <i>destination IP</i> Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# no sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1 switch(config-sync-sp)#	Removes the specified switch from the switch profile.
Step 4	exit Example: switch(config-sync-sp)# exit switch#	Exits the switch profile configuration mode.
Step 5	(Optional) show switch-profile Example: switch# show switch-profile	Displays the switch profile configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Displaying the Switch Profile Buffer

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure sync	Enters configuration synchronization mode.
Step 2	switch(config-sync) # switch-profile <i>profile-name</i>	Enters switch profile synchronization configuration mode for the specified switch profile.
Step 3	switch(config-sync-sp) # show switch-profile <i>profile-name</i> buffer	Enters interface switch profile synchronization configuration mode for the specified interface.

Example

The following example shows how to display the switch profile buffer for a service profile called sp:

```

switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1       vlan 101
1.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
2       mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
3       interface Ethernet1/2
3.1    switchport mode trunk
3.2    switchport trunk allowed vlan 101

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-move 3 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1       interface Ethernet1/2
1.1    switchport mode trunk
1.2    switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
2       vlan 101
2.1    ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3       mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
switch(config-sync-sp)#

```

Synchronizing Configurations After a Switch Reboot

If a Cisco Nexus Series switch reboots while a new configuration is being committed on a peer switch using a switch profile, complete the following steps to synchronize the peer switches after reload:

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Reapply configurations that were changed on the peer switch during the reboot.
 - Step 2** Enter the **commit** command.
 - Step 3** Verify that the configuration is applied correctly and both peers are back synchronized.
-

Example

Switch Profile Configuration show Commands

The following **show** commands display information about the switch profile.

Command	Purpose
show switch-profile <i>name</i>	Displays the commands in a switch profile.

Command	Purpose
show switch-profile <i>name</i> buffer	Displays the uncommitted commands in a switch profile, the commands that were moved, and the commands that were deleted.
show switch-profile <i>name</i> peer <i>IP-address</i>	Displays the synchronization status for a peer switch.
show switch-profile <i>name</i> session-history	Displays the status of the last 20 switch profile sessions.
show switch-profile <i>name</i> status	Displays the configuration synchronization status of a peer switch.
show running-config expand-port-profile	Displays details about the port profile.
show running-config exclude-provision	Displays the configurations for offline preprovisioned interfaces that are hidden.
show running-config switch-profile	Displays the running configuration for the switch profile on the local switch.
show startup-config switch-profile	Displays the startup configuration for the switch profile on the local switch.

For detailed information about the fields in the output from these commands, see the system management command reference for your platform.

Configuration Examples for Switch Profiles

Creating a Switch Profile on a Local and Peer Switch Example

The following example shows how to create a successful switch profile configuration on a local and peer switch including configuring QoS policies; a vPC peer-link, and a vPC in a switch profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	Enable CFSolP distribution on the local and the peer switch. Example: <pre>switch# configuration terminal switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute</pre>	
Step 2	Create a switch profile on the local and the peer switch. Example: <pre>switch(config-sync)# switch-profile abc switch(config-sync-sp)# sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1</pre>	

	Command or Action	Purpose
<p>Step 3</p>	<p>Verify that the switch profiles are the same on the local and the peer switch.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile abc status Start-time: 15801 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:08 2010 End-time: 6480 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:21:13 2010 Profile-Revision: 1 Session-type: Initial-Exchange Peer-triggered: Yes Profile-status: Sync Success Local information: ----- Status: Commit Success Error(s): Peer information: ----- IP-address: 10.1.1.1 Sync-status: In Sync. Status: Commit Success Error(s):</pre>	
<p>Step 4</p>	<p>Add the configuration commands to the switch profile on the local switch. The commands will be applied to the peer switch when the commands are committed.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# class-map type qos c1 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# match cos 2 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# class-map type qos c2 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# match cos 5 switch(config-sync-sp-cmap-qos)# policy-map type qos p1 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-qos)# class c1 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# set qos-group 2 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# class c2 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# set qos-group 3 switch(config-sync-sp-pmap-c-qos)# system qos switch(config-sync-sp-sys-qos)# service-policy type qos input p1 switch(config-sync-sp-sys-qos)# vlan 1-50</pre>	

	Command or Action	Purpose																																								
	<pre>switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# interface port-channel 100 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# vpc peer-link switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport mode trunk switch(config-sync-sp-if)# interface port-channel 10 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# vpc 1 switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport mode trunk switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-50</pre>																																									
Step 5	<p>View the buffered commands.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp-if)# show switch-profile switch-profile buffer</pre> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Seq-no</th> <th>Command</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>class-map type qos match-all c1</td></tr> <tr><td>1.1</td><td>match cos 2</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>class-map type qos match-all c2</td></tr> <tr><td>2.1</td><td>match cos 5</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>policy-map type qos p1</td></tr> <tr><td>3.1</td><td>class c1</td></tr> <tr><td>3.1.1</td><td>set qos-group 2</td></tr> <tr><td>3.2</td><td>class c2</td></tr> <tr><td>3.2.1</td><td>set qos-group 3</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>system qos</td></tr> <tr><td>4.1</td><td>service-policy type qos input p1</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>vlan 2-50</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>interface port-channel100</td></tr> <tr><td>6.1</td><td>vpc peer-link</td></tr> <tr><td>6.2</td><td>switchport mode trunk</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>interface port-channel10</td></tr> <tr><td>7.1</td><td>vpc 1</td></tr> <tr><td>7.2</td><td>switchport mode trunk</td></tr> <tr><td>7.3</td><td>switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-50</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Seq-no	Command	1	class-map type qos match-all c1	1.1	match cos 2	2	class-map type qos match-all c2	2.1	match cos 5	3	policy-map type qos p1	3.1	class c1	3.1.1	set qos-group 2	3.2	class c2	3.2.1	set qos-group 3	4	system qos	4.1	service-policy type qos input p1	5	vlan 2-50	6	interface port-channel100	6.1	vpc peer-link	6.2	switchport mode trunk	7	interface port-channel10	7.1	vpc 1	7.2	switchport mode trunk	7.3	switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-50	
Seq-no	Command																																									
1	class-map type qos match-all c1																																									
1.1	match cos 2																																									
2	class-map type qos match-all c2																																									
2.1	match cos 5																																									
3	policy-map type qos p1																																									
3.1	class c1																																									
3.1.1	set qos-group 2																																									
3.2	class c2																																									
3.2.1	set qos-group 3																																									
4	system qos																																									
4.1	service-policy type qos input p1																																									
5	vlan 2-50																																									
6	interface port-channel100																																									
6.1	vpc peer-link																																									
6.2	switchport mode trunk																																									
7	interface port-channel10																																									
7.1	vpc 1																																									
7.2	switchport mode trunk																																									
7.3	switchport trunk allowed vlan 1, 10-50																																									
Step 6	<p>Verify the commands in the switch profile.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp-if)# verify Verification Successful</pre>																																									
Step 7	<p>Apply the commands to the switch profile and to synchronize the configurations between the local and the peer switch.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config-sync-sp)# commit Commit Successful switch(config-sync)#</pre>																																									

Verifying the Synchronization Status Example

The following example shows how to verify the synchronization status between the local and the peer switch:

```
switch(config-sync)# show switch-profile switch-profile status
Start-time: 804935 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:41:10 2010
End-time: 956631 usecs after Mon Aug 23 06:41:20 2010

Profile-Revision: 2
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.1.1.1
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch(config-sync)#
```

Displaying the Running Configuration

The following example shows how to display the running configuration of the switch profile on the local switch:

```
switch# configure sync
switch(config-sync)# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.1.1.1
  class-map type qos match-all c1
    match cos 2
  class-map type qos match-all c2
    match cos 5
  policy-map type qos p1
    class c1
      set qos-group 2
    class c2
      set qos-group 3
  system qos
    service-policy type qos input p1
  vlan 2-50

interface port-channel10
  switchport mode trunk
  vpc 1
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 1,10-50

interface port-channel100
  switchport mode trunk
  vpc peer-link
switch(config-sync)#
```

Displaying the Switch Profile Synchronization Between Local and Peer Switches

This example shows how to display the synchronization status for two peer switches:

```
switch1# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 491815 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:51 2010
End-time: 449475 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:58 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.52
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch1#

switch2# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 503194 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:51 2010
End-time: 532989 usecs after Thu Aug 12 11:54:58 2010

Profile-Revision: 1
Session-type: Initial-Exchange
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.51
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch2#
```

Displaying Verify and Commit on Local and Peer Switches

This example shows how to configure a successful verify and commit of the local and peer switch:

```
switch1# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch1(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
```

```
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch1(config-sync-sp)# interface ethernet1/1
switch1(config-sync-sp-if)# description foo
switch1(config-sync-sp-if)# verify
Verification Successful
switch1(config-sync-sp)# commit
Commit Successful
switch1(config-sync)# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.193.194.52
  interface Ethernet1/1
    description foo
switch1(config-sync)# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 171513 usecs after Wed Aug 11 17:51:28 2010
End-time: 676451 usecs after Wed Aug 11 17:51:43 2010

Profile-Revision: 3
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: No
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.52
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

switch1(config-sync)#

switch2# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.193.194.51
  interface Ethernet1/1
    description foo
switch2# show switch-profile sp status

Start-time: 265716 usecs after Wed Aug 11 16:51:28 2010
End-time: 734702 usecs after Wed Aug 11 16:51:43 2010

Profile-Revision: 3
Session-type: Commit
Peer-triggered: Yes
Profile-status: Sync Success

Local information:
-----
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):

Peer information:
-----
IP-address: 10.193.194.51
Sync-status: In Sync.
Status: Commit Success
Error(s):
```

```
switch2#
```

Successful and Unsuccessful Synchronization Examples

The following example shows a successful synchronization of the switch profile on the peer switch:

```
switch# show switch-profile abc peer

switch# show switch-profile sp peer 10.193.194.52
Peer-sync-status      : In Sync.
Peer-status           : Commit Success
Peer-error(s)        :
switch1#
```

The following example shows an unsuccessful synchronization of a switch profile on the peer switch, with a peer not reachable status:

```
switch# show switch-profile sp peer 10.193.194.52
Peer-sync-status      : Not yet merged. pending-merge:1 received_merge:0
Peer-status           : Peer not reachable
Peer-error(s)        :
switch#
```

Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer

This example shows how to configure the switch profile buffer, the buffer-move configuration, and the buffer-delete configuration:

```
switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# vlan 101
switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
switch(config-sync-sp-vlan)# exit
switch(config-sync-sp)# mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
switch(config-sync-sp)# interface ethernet1/2
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport mode trunk
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
switch(config-sync-sp-if)# exit
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1       vlan 101
1.1     ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
2       mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop
3       interface Ethernet1/2
3.1     switchport mode trunk
3.2     switchport trunk allowed vlan 101

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-move 3 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1       interface Ethernet1/2
1.1     switchport mode trunk
```

```

1.2      switchport trunk allowed vlan 101
2        vlan 101
2.1      ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3        mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-delete 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
2        vlan 101
2.1      ip igmp snooping querier 10.101.1.1
3        mac address-table static 0000.0000.0001 vlan 101 drop

switch(config-sync-sp)# buffer-delete all
switch(config-sync-sp)# show switch-profile sp buffer
switch(config-sync-sp)#

```

Importing Configurations

The following example shows how to import an interface configuration:

```

switch# show running-config interface ethernet1/3

!Command: show running-config interface Ethernet1/3
!Time: Wed Aug 11 18:12:44 2010

version 5.0(2)N1(1)

interface Ethernet1/3
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-100

switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line.  End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1

switch(config-sync-sp)# import interface Ethernet1/3
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1        interface Ethernet1/3
1.1      switchport mode trunk
1.2      switchport trunk allowed vlan 1-100

switch(config-sync-sp-import)# verify
Verification Successful
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# commit
Commit Successful
switch(config-sync)#

```

The following example shows how to import the supported commands in a running configuration:

```

switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# import running-config
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1        logging event link-status default

```

```

2      vlan 1
3      port-profile type ethernet ppl
3.1    bandwidth 5000
3.2    bandwidth inherit
3.3    speed 10000
3.4    state enabled
4      interface port-channel3
4.1    switchport mode trunk
4.2    vpc peer-link
4.3    spanning-tree port type network
5      interface port-channel30
5.1    switchport mode trunk
5.2    vpc 30
5.3    switchport trunk allowed vlan 2-10
6      interface port-channel31
6.1    switchport mode trunk
6.2    vpc 31
6.3    switchport trunk allowed vlan 11-20
7      interface port-channel101
7.1    switchport mode fex-fabric
7.2    fex associate 101
8      interface port-channel102
8.1    switchport mode fex-fabric
8.2    vpc 102
8.3    fex associate 102
9      interface port-channel103
9.1    switchport mode fex-fabric
9.2    vpc 103
9.3    fex associate 103
10     interface Ethernet1/1
11     interface Ethernet1/2
12     interface Ethernet1/3
13     interface Ethernet1/4
13.1   switchport mode trunk
13.2   channel-group 3
14     interface Ethernet1/5
14.1   switchport mode trunk
14.2   channel-group 3
15     interface Ethernet1/6
15.1   switchport mode trunk
15.2   channel-group 3
16     interface Ethernet1/7
16.1   switchport mode trunk
16.2   channel-group 3
17     interface Ethernet1/8
18     interface Ethernet1/9
18.1   switchport mode trunk
18.2   switchport trunk allowed vlan 11-20
18.3   channel-group 31 mode active
19     interface Ethernet1/10
19.1   switchport mode trunk
19.2   switchport trunk allowed vlan 11-20
19.3   channel-group 31 mode active
20     interface Ethernet1/11
21     interface Ethernet1/12
...
45     interface Ethernet2/4
45.1   fex associate 101
45.2   switchport mode fex-fabric
45.3   channel-group 101
46     interface Ethernet2/5
46.1   fex associate 101
46.2   switchport mode fex-fabric
46.3   channel-group 101

```

```

47      interface Ethernet2/6
47.1    fex associate 101
47.2    switchport mode fex-fabric
47.3    channel-group 101
48      interface Ethernet2/7
48.1    fex associate 101
48.2    switchport mode fex-fabric
48.3    channel-group 101
49      interface Ethernet2/8
49.1    fex associate 101
...
89      interface Ethernet100/1/32
90      interface Ethernet100/1/33
91      interface Ethernet100/1/34
92      interface Ethernet100/1/35
93      interface Ethernet100/1/36
...
105     interface Ethernet100/1/48
switch(config-sync-sp-import)#

```

The following example shows how to import selected supported commands. First, show the port profile running configuration to identify the configuration that you are going to import:

```

switch# show running-config port-profile

!Command: show running-config port-profile
!Time: Thu Aug 12 12:09:11 2010

version 5.0(2)N1(1)
port-profile type ethernet ppl
  bandwidth 5000
  bandwidth inherit
  speed 10000
  state enabled

switch#

switch# configure sync
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config-sync)# switch-profile sp
Switch-Profile started, Profile ID is 1
switch(config-sync-sp)# import
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# port-profile type ethernet ppl
switch(config-sync-sp-import-if)# bandwidth 5000
switch(config-sync-sp-import-if)# bandwidth inherit
switch(config-sync-sp-import-if)# speed 10000
switch(config-sync-sp-import-if)# state enabled
switch(config-sync-sp-import-if)# show switch-profile sp buffer
-----
Seq-no  Command
-----
1       port-profile type ethernet ppl
1.1     bandwidth 5000
1.2     bandwidth inherit
1.3     speed 10000
1.4     state enabled

switch(config-sync-sp-import-if)# verify
Verification Successful
switch(config-sync-sp-import)# commit
Commit Successful
switch(config-sync)# show running-config switch-profile
switch-profile sp
  sync-peers destination 10.193.194.52

```

```

port-profile type ethernet ppl
  bandwidth 5000
  bandwidth inherit
  speed 10000
  state enabled
switch(config-sync) #

```

Sample Migrations Using the Import Command

Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender A-A Topology Example

This example shows the tasks used to migrate to Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender A-A topology. For details on the tasks, see the appropriate sections in this chapter.

Procedure

- Step 1** Ensure configurations are the same on both switches.
 - Step 2** Configure the switch-profile with same name on both switches.
 - Step 3** Enter the **import running config** command on both switches.
 - Step 4** Enter the **switch-profile name buffer** command to ensure all configurations are correctly imported on both switches.
 - Step 5** Remove unwanted configuration settings by editing the buffer.
For details, see [Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer, on page 30](#).
 - Step 6** Enter the **commit** command on both switches.
 - Step 7** Enter the **sync-peers destination IP-address** command to configure the peer switch on both switches.
 - Step 8** Enter the **switch-profile name status** command to ensure both switches are synchronized.
-

Migrating Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender Fabric Extender Straight-Through Topology Example

This example shows the tasks used to migrate to Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1) in a Fabric Extender Straight-Through topology. For details on the tasks, see the appropriate sections in this chapter.

Procedure

- Step 1** Ensure the vPC port-channel configurations are the same on both switches.
- Step 2** Configure the switch-profile with the same name on both switches.
- Step 3** Enter the **import interface port-channel x-y, port-channel z** command for all vPC port-channels on both switches.
- Step 4** Enter the **show switch-profile name buffer** command to ensure all configurations are correctly imported on both switches.
- Step 5** Remove unwanted configuration settings by editing the buffer.

For details, see [Configuring the Switch Profile Buffer, Moving the Buffer, and Deleting the Buffer](#), on page 30.

- Step 6** Enter the **commit** command on both switches.
 - Step 7** Enter the **sync-peers destination *IP-address*** command to configure the peer switch on both switches.
 - Step 8** Enter the **show switch-profile *name* status** command to ensure both switches are synchronized.
-



CHAPTER 4

Configuring Module Pre-Provisioning

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Module Pre-Provisioning, on page 37](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations, on page 37](#)
- [Enabling Module Pre-Provisioning, on page 38](#)
- [Removing Module Pre-Provisioning, on page 39](#)
- [Verifying the Pre-Provisioned Configuration, on page 39](#)
- [Configuration Examples for Pre-Provisioning, on page 40](#)

Information About Module Pre-Provisioning

The pre-provisioning feature allows you to preconfigure interfaces before inserting or attaching a module. If a module goes offline, you can also use pre-provisioning to make changes to the interface configurations for the offline module. When a pre-provisioned module comes online, the pre-provisioning configurations are applied. If any configurations were not applied, a syslog is generated. The syslog lists the configurations that were not accepted.

In some Virtual Port Channel (vPC) topologies, pre-provisioning is required for the configuration synchronization feature. Pre-provisioning allows you to synchronize the configuration for an interface that is online with one peer but offline with another peer.

Guidelines and Limitations

Pre-provisioning has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- When a module comes online, commands that are not applied are listed in the syslog.
- If a slot is pre-provisioned for module A and if you insert module B into the slot, module B does not come online.
- There is no MIB support for pre-provisioned interfaces.
- Cisco DCNM is not supported.

Enabling Module Pre-Provisioning

You can enable pre-provisioning on a module that is offline. Enter the **provision model** *model* command in module pre-provision mode.



Note After enabling pre-provisioning, you can configure the interfaces as though they are online.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configuration terminal Example: switch# config t switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	slot <i>slot</i> Example: switch(config)# slot 101 switch(config-slot)#	Selects the slot to pre-provision and enters slot configuration mode.
Step 3	provision model <i>model</i> Example: switch(config-slot)# provision model N2K-C2248T switch(config-slot)#	Selects the module that you want to pre-provision.
Step 4	exit Example: switch(config-slot)# exit switch#	Exits slot configuration mode.
Step 5	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to select slot 101 and the N2K-C2232P module to pre-provision.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# slot 101
switch(config-slot)# provision model N2K-C2232P
switch(config-slot)# exit
```

Removing Module Pre-Provisioning

You can remove a module that has been pre-provisioned.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configuration terminal Example: switch# config t switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	slot slot Example: switch(config)# slot 101 switch(config-slot)#	Selects the slot to pre-provision and enters slot configuration mode.
Step 3	no provision model model Example: switch(config-slot)# no provision model N2K-C2248T switch(config-slot)#	Removes pre-provisioning from the module.
Step 4	exit Example: switch(config-slot)# exit switch#	Exits slot configuration mode.
Step 5	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to remove a preprovisioned module from a chassis slot:

```
switch(config)# slot 2
switch(config-slot)# no provision model N5K-M1404
switch(config-slot)#
```

Verifying the Pre-Provisioned Configuration

To display the pre-provisioned configuration, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show module	Displays module information.
show switch-profile	Displays switch profile information.
show running-config exclude-provision	Displays the running configuration without the pre-provisioned interfaces or modules that are offline.
show provision failed-config	Displays the pre-provisioned commands that were not applied to the configuration when the interface or module came online. This command also displays a history of failed commands.
show running-config	Displays the running configuration including the pre-provisioned configuration.
show startup-config	Displays the startup configuration including the pre-provisioned configuration.

Configuration Examples for Pre-Provisioning

The following example shows how to enable pre-provisioning on slot 110 on the Cisco Nexus 2232P Fabric Extender and how to pre-provision interface configuration commands on the Ethernet 110/1/1 interface.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# slot 110
switch(config-slot)# provision model N2K-C2232P
switch(config-slot)# exit

switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# interface Ethernet110/1/1
switch(config-if)# description module is preprovisioned
switch(config-if)# show running-config interface Ethernet110/1/1
Time: Wed Aug 25 21:29:44 2010

version 5.0(2)N1(1)

interface Ethernet110/1/1
  description module is preprovisioned
```

The following example shows the list of pre-provisioned commands that were not applied when the module came online.

```
switch(config-if-range)# show provision failed-config 101
The following config was not applied for slot 33
=====

interface Ethernet101/1/1
  service-policy input test

interface Ethernet101/1/2
  service-policy input test

interface Ethernet101/1/3
  service-policy input test
```

This example shows how to remove all pre-provisioned modules from a slot:

```
switch(config)# slot 2
switch(config-slot)# no provision model
switch(config-slot)#
```




CHAPTER 5

Using Cisco Fabric Services

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About CFS, on page 43](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for CFS, on page 44](#)
- [CFS Distribution, on page 45](#)
- [CFS Support for Applications, on page 49](#)
- [CFS Regions, on page 53](#)
- [Configuring CFS over IP, on page 56](#)
- [Displaying CFS Distribution Information, on page 58](#)
- [Default Settings for CFS, on page 61](#)

Information About CFS

Some features in the Cisco Nexus Series switch require configuration synchronization with other switches in the network to function correctly. Synchronization through manual configuration at each switch in the network can be a tedious and error-prone process.

Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) provides a common infrastructure for automatic configuration synchronization in the network. It provides the transport function and a set of common services to the features. CFS has the ability to discover CFS-capable switches in the network and to discover feature capabilities in all CFS-capable switches.

Cisco Nexus Series switches support CFS message distribution over Fibre Channel and IPv4 or IPv6 networks. If the switch is provisioned with Fibre Channel ports, CFS over Fibre Channel is enabled by default while CFS over IP must be explicitly enabled.

CFS provides the following features:

- Peer-to-peer protocol with no client-server relationship at the CFS layer.
- CFS message distribution over Fibre Channel and IPv4 or IPv6 networks.
- Three modes of distribution.
 - Coordinated distributions—Only one distribution is allowed in the network at any given time.
 - Uncoordinated distributions—Multiple parallel distributions are allowed in the network except when a coordinated distribution is in progress.

- Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions—Multiple parallel distributions are allowed in the network in the presence of an existing coordinated distribution. Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions are allowed to run in parallel with all other types of distributions.

The following features are supported for CFS distribution over IP:

- One scope of distribution over an IP network:
 - Physical scope—The distribution spans the entire IP network.

The following features are supported for CFS distribution over Fibre Channel SANs:

- Three scopes of distribution over SAN fabrics.
 - Logical scope — The distribution occurs within the scope of a VSAN.
 - Physical scope — The distribution spans the entire physical topology.
 - Over a selected set of VSANs — Some features require configuration distribution over some specific VSANs. These features can specify to CFS the set of VSANs over which to restrict the distribution.
- Supports a merge protocol that facilitates the merge of feature configuration during a fabric merge event (when two independent SAN fabrics merge).

Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet

The Cisco Fabric Services over Ethernet (CFSoE) is a reliable state transport mechanism that you can use to synchronize the actions of the vPC peer devices. CFSoE carries messages and packets for many features linked with vPC, such as STP and IGMP. Information is carried in CFS/CFSoE protocol data units (PDUs).

When you enable the vPC feature, the device automatically enables CFSoE, and you do not have to configure anything. CFSoE distributions for vPCs do not need the capabilities to distribute over IP or the CFS regions. You do not need to configure anything for the CFSoE feature to work correctly on vPCs.

You can use the `show mac address-table` command to display the MAC addresses that CFSoE synchronizes for the vPC peer link.



Note Do not enter the `no cfs eth distribute` or the `no cfs distribute` command. CFSoE must be enabled for vPC functionality. If you do enter either of these commands when vPC is enabled, the system displays an error message.

When you enter the `show cfs application` command, the output displays "Physical-eth," which shows the applications that are using CFSoE.

Guidelines and Limitations for CFS

CFS has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- If the virtual port channel (vPC) feature is enabled for your device, do not disable CFSoE.



Note CFSoE must be enabled for the vPC feature to work.

- All CFSoIP-enabled devices with similar multicast addresses form one CFSoIP fabric.
- Make sure that CFS is enabled for the applications that you want to configure.
- Anytime you lock a fabric, your username is remembered across restarts and switchovers.
- Anytime you lock a fabric, configuration changes attempted by anyone else are rejected.
- While a fabric is locked, the application holds a working copy of configuration changes in a pending database or temporary storage area, not in the running configuration.
- Configuration changes that have not been committed yet (still saved as a working copy) are not in the running configuration and do not display in the output of **show** commands.
- If you start a CFS session that requires a fabric lock but forget to end the session, an administrator can clear the session.
- An empty commit is allowed if configuration changes are not previously made. In this case, the **commit** command results in a session that acquires locks and distributes the current database.
- You can use the **commit** command only on the specific device where the fabric lock was acquired.
- CFSoIP and CFSoE are not supported for use together.
- CFS regions can be applied only to CFSoIP applications.

CFS Distribution

The CFS distribution functionality is independent of the lower layer transport. Cisco Nexus Series switches support CFS distribution over IP and over Fibre Channel. Features that use CFS are unaware of the lower layer transport.

CFS Distribution Modes

CFS supports three distribution modes to accommodate different feature requirements:

- Uncoordinated Distribution
- Coordinated Distribution
- Unrestricted Uncoordinated Distributions

Only one mode is allowed at any given time.

Uncoordinated Distribution

Uncoordinated distributions are used to distribute information that is not expected to conflict with information from a peer. Parallel uncoordinated distributions are allowed for a feature.

Coordinated Distribution

Coordinated distributions allow only one feature distribution at a given time. CFS uses locks to enforce this feature. A coordinated distribution is not allowed to start if locks are taken for the feature anywhere in the network. A coordinated distribution consists of three stages:

- A network lock is acquired.
- The configuration is distributed and committed.
- The network lock is released.

Coordinated distribution has two variants:

- CFS driven —The stages are executed by CFS in response to a feature request without intervention from the feature.
- Feature driven—The stages are under the complete control of the feature.

Coordinated distributions are used to distribute information that can be manipulated and distributed from multiple switches, for example, the port security configuration.

Unrestricted Uncoordinated Distributions

Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions allow multiple parallel distributions in the network in the presence of an existing coordinated distribution. Unrestricted uncoordinated distributions are allowed to run in parallel with all other types of distributions.

Disabling or Enabling CFS Distribution on a Switch

If the switch is provisioned with Fibre Channel ports, CFS over Fibre Channel is enabled by default. CFS over IP must be explicitly enabled.

You can globally disable CFS on a switch to isolate the features using CFS from network-wide distributions while maintaining physical connectivity. When CFS is globally disabled on a switch, CFS operations are restricted to the switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# no cfs distribute	Globally disables CFS distribution (CFS over Fibre Channel or IP) for all applications on the switch.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# cfs distribute	Enables CFS distribution on the switch. This is the default.

Verifying the CFS Distribution Status

The **show cfs status** command displays the status of CFS distribution on the switch:

```
switch# show cfs status
Distribution : Enabled
Distribution over IP : Enabled - mode IPv4
IPv4 multicast address : 239.255.70.83
IPv6 multicast address : ff15::efff:4653
Distribution over Ethernet : Enabled
```

CFS Distribution over IP

CFS distribution over IP supports the following features:

- Physical distribution over an entirely IP network.
- Physical distribution over a hybrid Fibre Channel and IP network with the distribution reaching all switches that are reachable over either Fibre Channel or IP.



Note The switch attempts to distribute information over Fibre Channel first and then over the IP network if the first attempt over Fibre Channel fails. CFS does not send duplicate messages if distribution over both IP and Fibre Channel is enabled.

- Distribution over IP version 4 (IPv4) or IP version 6 (IPv6).

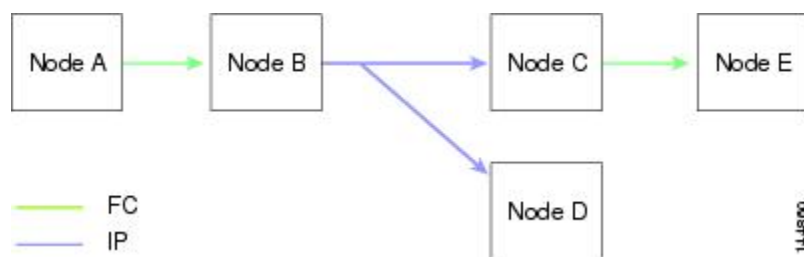


Note CFS cannot distribute over both IPv4 and IPv6 from the same switch.

- Keepalive mechanism to detect network topology changes using a configurable multicast address.
- Compatibility with Cisco MDS 9000 Family switches running release 2.x or later.

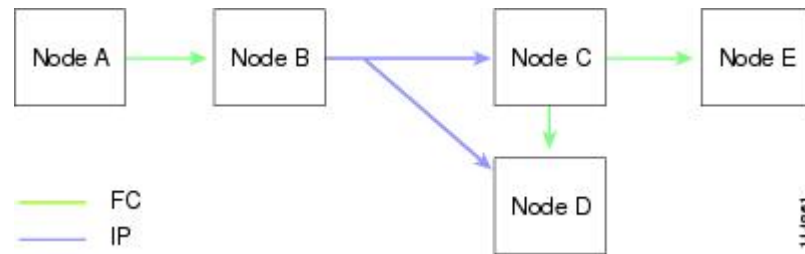
The following figure (*Network Example 1*) shows a network with both Fibre Channel and IP connections. Node A forwards an event to node B over Fibre Channel. Node B forwards the event node C and node D using unicast IP. Node C forwards the event to node E using Fibre Channel.

Figure 1: Network Example 1 with Fibre Channel and IP Connections



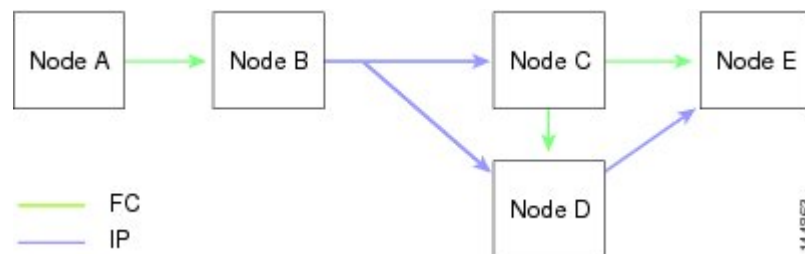
The following figure (*Network Example 2*) is the same as the previous figure except that node C and node D are connected using Fibre Channel. All processes is the same in this example because node B has node C and node D the distribution list for IP. Node C does not forward to node D because node D is already in the distribution list from node B.

Figure 2: Network Example 2 with Fibre Channel and IP Connections



The following figure (*Network Example 3*) is the same as the previous figure except that node D and node E are connected using IP. Both node C and node D forward the event to E because the node E is not in the distribution list from node B.

Figure 3: Network Example 3 with Fibre Channel and IP Connections



CFS Distribution over Fibre Channel

For FCS distribution over Fibre Channel, the CFS protocol layer resides on top of the FC2 layer. CFS uses the FC2 transport services to send information to other switches. CFS uses a proprietary SW_ILS (0x77434653) protocol for all CFS packets. CFS packets are sent to or from the switch domain controller addresses.

CFS Distribution Scopes

Different applications on the Cisco Nexus Series switches need to distribute the configuration at various levels. The following levels are available when using CFS distribution over Fibre Channel:

- VSAN level (logical scope)

Applications that operate within the scope of a VSAN have the configuration distribution restricted to the VSAN. An example application is port security where the configuration database is applicable only within a VSAN.



Note Logical scope is not supported for FCS distribution over IP.

- Physical topology level (physical scope)

Some applications (such as NTP) need to distribute the configuration to the entire physical topology.

- Between two selected switches

Some applications operate only between selected switches in the network.

CFS Merge Support

CFS Merge is supported for CFS distribution over Fibre Channel.

An application keeps the configuration synchronized in a SAN fabric through CFS. Two such fabrics might merge as a result of an ISL coming up between them. These two fabrics could have two different sets of configuration information that need to be reconciled in the event of a merge. CFS provides notification each time an application peer comes online. If a fabric with M application peers merges with another fabric with N application peers, and if an application triggers a merge action on every notification, a link-up event results in M×N merges in the fabric.

CFS supports a protocol that reduces the number of merges required to one by handling the complexity of the merge at the CFS layer. This protocol runs per application per scope. The protocol involves selecting one switch in a fabric as the merge manager for that fabric. The other switches do not have a role in the merge process.

During a merge, the merge manager in the two fabrics exchange their configuration databases with each other. The application on one of them merges the information, decides if the merge is successful, and informs all switches in the combined fabric of the status of the merge.

In case of a successful merge, the merged database is distributed to all switches in the combined fabric and the entire new fabric remains in a consistent state. You can recover from a merge failure by starting a distribution from any of the switches in the new fabric. This distribution restores all peers in the fabric to the same configuration database.

CFS Support for Applications

CFS Application Requirements

All switches in the network must be CFS capable. Switches that are not CFS capable do not receive distributions, which results in part of the network not receiving the intended distribution. CFS has the following requirements:

- **Implicit CFS usage**—The first time that you issue a CFS task for a CFS-enabled application, the configuration modification process begins and the application locks the network.
- **Pending database**—The pending database is a temporary buffer to hold uncommitted information. The uncommitted changes are not applied immediately to ensure that the database is synchronized with the database in the other switches in the network. When you commit the changes, the pending database overwrites the configuration database (also known as the active database or the effective database).
- **CFS distribution enabled or disabled on a per-application basis**—The default (enable or disable) for the CFS distribution state differs between applications. If CFS distribution is disabled for an application, that application does not distribute any configuration and does not accept a distribution from other switches in the network.
- **Explicit CFS commit**—Most applications require an explicit commit operation to copy the changes in the temporary buffer to the application database, to distribute the new database to the network, and to release the network lock. The changes in the temporary buffer are not applied if you do not perform the commit operation.

Enabling CFS for an Application

All CFS-based applications provide an option to enable or disable the distribution capabilities.

Applications have the distribution enabled by default.

The application configuration is not distributed by CFS unless distribution is explicitly enabled for that application.

Verifying Application Registration Status

The **show cfs application** command displays the applications that are currently registered with CFS. The first column displays the application name. The second column indicates whether the application is enabled or disabled for distribution (enabled or disabled). The last column indicates the scope of distribution for the application (logical, physical, or both).



Note The **show cfs application** command only displays applications registered with CFS. Conditional services that use CFS do not appear in the output unless these services are running.

```
switch# show cfs application

-----
Application      Enabled   Scope
-----
ntp              No       Physical-all
fscm             Yes      Physical-fc
rscn             No       Logical
fctimer          No       Physical-fc
syslogd          No       Physical-all
callhome         No       Physical-all
fcdomain         Yes      Logical
device-alias     Yes      Physical-fc

Total number of entries = 8
```

The **show cfs application name** command displays the details for a particular application. It displays the enabled/disabled state, timeout as registered with CFS, merge capability (if it has registered with CFS for merge support), and the distribution scope.

```
switch# show cfs application name fscm

Enabled          : Yes
Timeout          : 100s
Merge Capable    : No
Scope            : Physical-fc
```

Locking the Network

When you configure (first-time configuration) a feature (application) that uses the CFS infrastructure, that feature starts a CFS session and locks the network. When a network is locked, the switch software allows configuration changes to this feature only from the switch that holds the lock. If you make configuration changes to the feature from another switch, the switch issues a message to inform the user about the locked status. The configuration changes are held in a pending database by that application.

If you start a CFS session that requires a network lock but forget to end the session, an administrator can clear the session. If you lock a network at any time, your username is remembered across restarts and switchovers. If another user (on the same machine) tries to perform configuration tasks, that user's attempts are rejected.

Verifying CFS Lock Status

The **show cfs lock** command displays all the locks that are currently acquired by any application. For each application the command displays the application name and scope of the lock taken. If the application lock is taken in the physical scope, then this command displays the switch WWN, IP address, user name, and user type of the lock holder. If the application is taken in the logical scope, then this command displays the VSAN in which the lock is taken, the domain, IP address, user name, and user type of the lock holder.

```
switch# show cfs lock

Application: ntp
Scope      : Physical
-----
Switch WWN          IP Address      User Name      User Type
-----
20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167  admin         CLI/SNMP v3
Total number of entries = 1

Application: port-security
Scope      : Logical
-----
VSAN   Domain   IP Address      User Name      User Type
-----
1      238     10.76.100.167  admin         CLI/SNMP v3
2      211     10.76.100.167  admin         CLI/SNMP v3
Total number of entries = 2
```

The **show cfs lock name** command displays the lock details for the specified application.

```
switch# show cfs lock name ntp

Scope      : Physical
-----
Switch WWN          IP Address      User Name      User Type
-----
20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167  admin         CLI/SNMP v3

Total number of entries = 1
```

Committing Changes

A commit operation saves the pending database for all application peers and releases the lock for all switches.

The commit function does not start a session; only a lock function starts a session. However, an empty commit is allowed if configuration changes are not previously made. In this case, a commit operation results in a session that acquires locks and distributes the current database.

When you commit configuration changes to a feature using the CFS infrastructure, you receive a notification about one of the following responses:

- One or more external switches report a successful status—The application applies the changes locally and releases the network lock.
- None of the external switches report a successful state—The application considers this state a failure and does not apply the changes to any switch in the network. The network lock is not released.

You can commit changes for a specified feature by entering the **commit** command for that feature.

Discarding Changes

If you discard configuration changes, the application flushes the pending database and releases locks in the network. Both the abort and commit functions are supported only from the switch from which the network lock is acquired.

You can discard changes for a specified feature by using the **abort** command for that feature.

Saving the Configuration

Configuration changes that have not been applied yet (still in the pending database) are not shown in the running configuration. The configuration changes in the pending database overwrite the configuration in the effective database when you commit the changes.



Caution

If you do not commit the changes, they are not saved to the running configuration.

Clearing a Locked Session

You can clear a lock held by an application from any device in the fabric.



Caution

When you clear a lock in the fabric, any pending configurations in any device in the fabric are discarded.

Before you begin

You must have administrator permissions to release a lock.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	(Optional) switch# show application-name status	Shows the current application state.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	Required: switch# clear <i>application-name</i> session	Clears the application configuration session and releases the lock on the fabric. All pending changes are discarded.
Step 3	(Optional) switch# show <i>application-name</i> status	Shows the current application state.

Example

```
switch# show ntp status
Distribution : Enabled
Last operational state: Fabric Locked
switch# clear ntp session
switch# show ntp status
Distribution : Enabled
Last operational state: No session
```

CFS Regions

About CFS Regions

A CFS region is a user-defined subset of switches for a given feature or application in its physical distribution scope. When a network spans a vast geography, you might need to localize or restrict the distribution of certain profiles among a set of switches based on their physical proximity. CFS regions allow you to create multiple islands of distribution within the network for a given CFS feature or application. CFS regions are designed to restrict the distribution of a feature's configuration to a specific set or grouping of switches in a network.



Note You can only configure a CFS region based on physical switches. You cannot configure a CFS region in a VSAN.

Example Scenario

The Smart Call Home application triggers alerts to network administrators when a situation arises or something abnormal occurs. When the network covers many geographies, and there are multiple network administrators who are each responsible for a subset of switches in the network, the Smart Call Home application sends alerts to all network administrators regardless of their location. For the Smart Call Home application to send message alerts selectively to network administrators, the physical scope of the application has to be fine tuned or narrowed down. You can achieve this scenario by implementing CFS regions.

CFS regions are identified by numbers ranging from 0 through 200. Region 0 is reserved as the default region and contains every switch in the network. You can configure regions from 1 through 200. The default region maintains backward compatibility.

If the feature is moved, that is, assigned to a new region, its scope is restricted to that region; it ignores all other regions for distribution or merging purposes. The assignment of the region to a feature has precedence in distribution over its initial physical scope.

You can configure a CFS region to distribute configurations for multiple features. However, on a given switch, you can configure only one CFS region at a time to distribute the configuration for a given feature. Once you assign a feature to a CFS region, its configuration cannot be distributed within another CFS region.

Managing CFS Regions

Creating CFS Regions

You can create a CFS region.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs region <i>region-id</i>	Creates a region.

Assigning Applications to CFS Regions

You can assign an application on a switch to a region.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs region <i>region-id</i>	Creates a region.
Step 3	switch(config-cfs-region)# <i>application</i>	Adds application(s) to the region. Note You can add any number of applications on the switch to a region. If you try adding an application to the same region more than once, you see the "Application already present in the same region" error message.

Example

The following example shows how to assign applications to a region:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# cfs region 1
switch(config-cfs-region)# ntp
```

```
switch(config-cfs-region)# callhome
```

Moving an Application to a Different CFS Region

You can move an application from one region to another region.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs region <i>region-id</i>	Enters CFS region configuration submode.
Step 3	switch(config-cfs-region)# <i>application</i>	Indicates application(s) to be moved from one region into another. Note If you try moving an application to the same region more than once, you see the "Application already present in the same region" error message.

Example

The following example shows how to move an application into Region 2 that was originally assigned to Region 1:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# cfs region 2
switch(config-cfs-region)# ntp
```

Removing an Application from a Region

Removing an application from a region is the same as moving the application back to the default region (Region 0), which brings the entire network into the scope of distribution for the application.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs region <i>region-id</i>	Enters CFS region configuration submode.
Step 3	switch(config-cfs-region)# no <i>application</i>	Removes application(s) that belong to the region.

Deleting CFS Regions

Deleting a region nullifies the region definition. All the applications bound by the region are released back to the default region.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# no cfs region <i>region-id</i>	Deletes the region. Note You see the, "All the applications in the region will be moved to the default region" warning.

Configuring CFS over IP

Enabling CFS over IPv4

You can enable or disable CFS over IPv4.



Note CFS cannot distribute over both IPv4 and IPv6 from the same switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs ipv4 distribute	Globally enables CFS over IPv4 for all applications on the switch.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# no cfs ipv4 distribute	Disables (default) CFS over IPv4 on the switch.

Enabling CFS over IPv6

You can enable or disable CFS over IPv6.



Note CFS cannot distribute over both IPv4 and IPv6 from the same switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure	Enters configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs ipv6 distribute	Globally enables CFS over IPv6 for all applications on the switch.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# no cfs ipv6 distribute	Disables (default) CFS over IPv6 on the switch.

Verifying the CFS Over IP Configuration

The following example show how to verify the CFS over IP configuration:

```
switch# show cfs status
Distribution : Enabled
Distribution over IP : Enabled - mode IPv4
IPv4 multicast address : 239.255.70.83
IPv6 multicast address : ff15::efff:4653
```

Configuring IP Multicast Addresses for CFS over IP

All CFS over IP enabled switches with similar multicast addresses form one CFS over IP network. CFS protocol-specific distributions, such as the keepalive mechanism for detecting network topology changes, use the IP multicast address to send and receive information.



Note CFS distributions for application data use directed unicast.

Configuring IPv4 Multicast Address for CFS

You can configure a CFS over IP multicast address value for IPv4. The default IPv4 multicast address is 239.255.70.83.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs ipv4 mcast-address <i>ipv4-address</i>	Configures the IPv4 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv4. The ranges of valid IPv4 addresses are 239.255.0.0 through 239.255.255.255 and 239.192/16 through 239.251/16.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# no cfs ipv4 mcast-address <i>ipv4-address</i>	Reverts to the default IPv4 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv4. The default IPv4 multicast address for CFS is 239.255.70.83.

Configuring IPv6 Multicast Address for CFS

You can configure a CFS over IP multicast address value for IPv6. The default IPv6 multicast address is ff13:7743:4653.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure	Enters configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# cfs ipv6 mcast-address <i>ipv4-address</i>	Configures the IPv6 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv6. The range of valid IPv6 addresses is ff15::/16 (ff15::0000:0000 through ff15::fff:fff) and ff18::/16 (ff18::0000:0000 through ff18::fff:fff).
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# no cfs ipv6 mcast-address <i>ipv4-address</i>	Reverts to the default IPv6 multicast address for CFS distribution over IPv6. The default IPv6 multicast address for CFS over IP is ff15::eff:4653.

Verifying the IP Multicast Address Configuration for CFS over IP

The following example shows how to verify the IP multicast address configuration for CFS over IP:

```
switch# show cfs status
Fabric distribution Enabled
IP distribution Enabled mode ipv4
IPv4 multicast address : 10.1.10.100
IPv6 multicast address : ff13::e244:4754
```

Displaying CFS Distribution Information

The **show cfs merge status name** command displays the merge status for a given application. The following example displays the output for an application distributing in logical scope. It shows the merge status in all valid VSANs on the switch. The command output shows the merge status as one of the following: Success, Waiting, or Failure or In Progress. In case of a successful merge, all the switches in the network are shown under the local network. In case of a merge failure or a merge in progress, the local network and the remote network involved in the merge are indicated separately. The application server in each network that is mainly responsible for the merge is indicated by the term Merge Master.

```
switch# show cfs merge status name port-security

Logical [VSAN 1] Merge Status: Failed
Local Fabric
-----
Domain Switch WWN                IP Address
-----
238      20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167  [Merge Master]
```

```

Remote Fabric
-----
Domain Switch WWN          IP Address
-----
236    20:00:00:0e:d7:00:3c:9e  10.76.100.169    [Merge Master]

Logical [VSAN 2] Merge Status: Success
Local Fabric
-----
Domain Switch WWN          IP Address
-----
211    20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167    [Merge Master]
1      20:00:00:0e:d7:00:3c:9e  10.76.100.169

Logical [VSAN 3] Merge Status: Success
Local Fabric
-----
Domain Switch WWN          IP Address
-----
221    20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167    [Merge Master]
103    20:00:00:0e:d7:00:3c:9e  10.76.100.169

```

The following example of the **show cfs merge status name** command output displays an application using the physical scope with a merge failure. The command uses the specified application name to display the merge status based on the application scope.

```

switch# show cfs merge status name ntp

Physical Merge Status: Failed
Local Fabric
-----
Switch WWN          IP Address
-----
20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167    [Merge Master]

Remote Fabric
-----
Switch WWN          IP Address
-----
20:00:00:0e:d7:00:3c:9e  10.76.100.169    [Merge Master]

```

The **show cfs peers** command output displays all the switches in the physical network in terms of the switch WWN and the IP address. The local switch is indicated as Local.

```
switch# show cfs peers

Physical Fabric
-----
Switch WWN                IP Address
-----
20:00:00:05:30:00:6b:9e  10.76.100.167   [Local]
20:00:00:0e:d7:00:3c:9e  10.76.100.169

Total number of entries = 2
```

The **show cfs peers name** command displays all the peers for which a particular application is registered with CFS. The command output shows all the peers for the physical scope or for each of the valid VSANs on the switch, depending on the application scope. For physical scope, the switch WWNs for all the peers are indicated. The local switch is indicated as Local.

```
switch# show cfs peers name ntp

Scope      : Physical
-----
Switch WWN                IP Address
-----
20:00:00:44:22:00:4a:9e  172.22.92.27   [Local]
20:00:00:05:30:01:1b:c2  172.22.92.215
```

The following example **show cfs peers name** command output displays all the application peers (all switches in which that application is registered). The local switch is indicated as Local.

```
switch# show cfs peers name port-security

Scope      : Logical [VSAN 1]
-----
Domain    Switch WWN                IP Address
-----
124      20:00:00:44:22:00:4a:9e  172.22.92.27   [Local]
98       20:00:00:05:30:01:1b:c2  172.22.92.215

Total number of entries = 2

Scope      : Logical [VSAN 3]
-----
Domain    Switch WWN                IP Address
-----
```

```

224      20:00:00:44:22:00:4a:9e  172.22.92.27  [Local]
151      20:00:00:05:30:01:1b:c2  172.22.92.215

```

```
Total number of entries = 2
```

Default Settings for CFS

The following table lists the default settings for CFS configurations.

Table 2: Default CFS Parameters

Parameters	Default
CFS distribution on the switch	Enabled
Database changes	Implicitly enabled with the first configuration change
Application distribution	Differs based on application
Commit	Explicit configuration is required
CFS over IP	Disabled
IPv4 multicast address	239.255.70.83
IPv6 multicast address	ff15::eff:4653

The CISCO-CFS-MIB contains SNMP configuration information for any CFS-related functions. See the MIB reference for your platform.

Enabling CFS to Distribute Smart Call Home Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Call Home configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network. The entire Call Home configuration is distributed except the device priority and the sysContact names.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome)# distribute	Enables CFS to distribute Smart Call Home configuration updates.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# show application-name status	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# distribute
switch(config-callhome)# show callhome status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config-callhome)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute DPVM Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute dynamic port VSAN membership (DPVM) configurations in order to consistently administer and maintain the DPVM database across all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.

Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Make sure that you enable the DPVM feature. To do so, use the **feature dpvm** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# dpvm distribute	Enables CFS to distribute DPVM configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show application-name status	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute DPVM configurations:

```
switch(config)# dpvm distribute
switch(config)# show dpvm status
Distribution is enabled.
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Domain Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Fibre Channel (FC) domain configurations in order to synchronize the configuration across the fabric from the console of a single Cisco NX-OS device and to ensure consistency in the allowed domain ID lists on all devices in the VSAN.

Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# fcdomain distribute	Enables CFS to distribute FC domain configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show application-name status	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute FC domain configurations:

```
switch(config)# fcdomain distribute
switch(config)# show fcdomain status
fcdomain distribution is enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Port Security Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Fibre Channel (FC) port security configurations in order to provide a single point of configuration for the entire fabric in the VSAN and to enforce the port security policies throughout the fabric.

Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Make sure that you enable the FC port security feature. To do so, use the **feature fc-port-security** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# fc-port-security distribute	Enables CFS to distribute FC port security configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show cfs application	Displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute FC port security configurations:

```
switch(config)# fc-port-security distribute
switch(config)# show cfs application
-----
Application Enabled Scope
-----
fc-port-securi Yes Logical
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute FC Timer Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute Fibre Channel (FC) timer configurations for all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.

Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# ftimer distribute	Enables CFS to distribute FC timer configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show application-name status	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute FC timer configurations:

```
switch(config)# fctimer distribute
switch(config)# show fctimer status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute IVR Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute inter-VSAN routing (IVR) configurations in order to enable efficient IVR configuration management and to provide a single point of configuration for the entire fabric in the VSAN.

Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Make sure that you install the Advanced SAN Services license.

Make sure that you enable the IVR feature. To do so, use the **feature ivr** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# ivr distribute	Enables CFS to distribute IVR configuration updates. Note You must enable IVR distribution on all IVR-enabled switches in the fabric.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show cfs application	Displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute IVR configurations:

```
switch(config)# ivr distribute
switch(config)# show cfs application
-----
Application Enabled Scope
-----
```

```
ivr Yes Physical-fc
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute NTP Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute NTP configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network.

Before you begin

Make sure that you enable the NTP feature (using the **feature ntp** command).

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# ntp distribute	Enables CFS to distribute NTP configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show application-name status	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp distribute
switch(config)# show ntp status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute RADIUS Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute RADIUS configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# radius distribute	Enables CFS to distribute RADIUS configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show application-name status	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# radius distribute
switch(config)# show radius status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute RSCN Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute registered state change notification (RSCN) configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the fabric.

Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the storage VDC. To change to the storage VDC, use the **switchto vdc fcoe** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# rscn distribute	Enables CFS to distribute RSCN configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show cfs application	Displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to enable CFS to distribute RSCN configurations:

```
switch(config)# rscn distribute
switch(config)# show cfs application
-----
Application Enabled Scope
-----
rscn Yes Logical
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
```

Enabling CFS to Distribute TACACS+ Configurations

You can enable CFS to distribute TACACS+ configurations to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network.

Before you begin

Make sure that you enable the TACACS+ feature (using the **feature tacacs+** command).

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# tacacs+ distribute	Enables CFS to distribute TACACS+ configuration updates.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show application-name status	For the specified application, displays the CFS distribution status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# tacacs+ distribute
switch(config)# show tacacs+ status
Distribution : Enabled
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```



CHAPTER 6

Configuring PTP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About PTP, on page 69](#)
- [PTP Device Types, on page 70](#)
- [PTP Process, on page 71](#)
- [Clock Management, on page 71](#)
- [High Availability for PTP, on page 72](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for PTP, on page 72](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for PTP, on page 72](#)
- [Default Settings for PTP, on page 72](#)
- [Configuring PTP, on page 73](#)

Information About PTP

PTP is a time synchronization protocol for nodes distributed across a network. Its hardware timestamp feature provides greater accuracy than other time synchronization protocols such as the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

A PTP system can consist of a combination of PTP and non-PTP devices. PTP devices include ordinary clocks, boundary clocks, and transparent clocks. Non-PTP devices include ordinary network switches, routers, and other infrastructure devices.

PTP is a distributed protocol that specifies how real-time PTP clocks in the system synchronize with each other. These clocks are organized into a master-slave synchronization hierarchy with the grandmaster clock, which is the clock at the top of the hierarchy, determining the reference time for the entire system. Synchronization is achieved by exchanging PTP timing messages, with the members using the timing information to adjust their clocks to the time of their master in the hierarchy. PTP operates within a logical scope called a PTP domain.

Starting from Cisco NXOS Release 6.0(2)A8(3), PTP supports configuring multiple PTP clocking domains, PTP grandmaster capability, PTP cost on interfaces for slave and passive election, and clock identity.

All the switches in a multi-domain environment, belong to one domain. The switches that are the part of boundary clock, must have multi-domain feature enabled on them. Each domain has user configurable parameters such as domain priority, clock class threshold and clock accuracy threshold. The clocks in each domain remain synchronized with the master clock in that domain. If the GPS in a domain fails, the master clock in the domain synchronizes time and data sets associated with the announce messages from the master clock in the domain where the GPS is active. If the master clock from the highest priority domain does not meet the clock quality attributes, a clock in the subsequent domain that match the criteria is selected. The Best

Master Clock Algorithm (BMCA) is used to select the master clock if none of the domains has the desired clock quality attributes. If all the domains have equal priority and the threshold values less than master clock attributes or if the threshold values are greater than the master clock attributes, BMCA is used to select the master clock.

Grandmaster capability feature controls the switch's ability of propagating its clock to other devices that it is connected to. When the switch receives announce messages on an interface, it checks the clock class threshold and clock accuracy threshold values. If the values of these parameters are within the predefined limits, then the switch acts as per PTP standards specified in IEEE 1588v2. If the switch does not receive announce messages from external sources or if the parameters of the announce messages received are not within the predefined limits, the port state will be changed to listening mode. On a switch with no slave ports, the state of all the PTP enabled ports is rendered as listening and on a switch with one slave port, the BMCA is used to determine states on all PTP enabled ports. Convergence time prevents timing loops at the PTP level when grandmaster capability is disabled on a switch. If the slave port is not selected on the switch, all the ports on the switch will be in listening state for a minimum interval specified in the convergence time. The convergence time range is from 3 to 2600 seconds and the default value is 3 seconds.

The interface cost applies to each PTP enabled port if the switch has more than one path to grandmaster clock. The port with the least cost value is elected as slave and the rest of the ports will remain as passive ports.

The clock identity is a unique 8-octet array presented in the form of a character array based on the switch MAC address. The clock identity is determined from MAC according to the IEEE1588v2-2008 specifications. The clock ID is a combination of bytes in a VLAN MAC address as defined in IEEE1588v2.

PTP Device Types

The following clocks are common PTP devices:

Ordinary clock

Communicates with the network based on a single physical port, similar to an end host. An ordinary clock can function as a grandmaster clock.

Boundary clock

Typically has several physical ports, with each port behaving like a port of an ordinary clock. However, each port shares the local clock, and the clock data sets are common to all ports. Each port decides its individual state, either master (synchronizing other ports connected to it) or slave (synchronizing to a downstream port), based on the best clock available to it through all of the other ports on the boundary clock. Messages that are related to synchronization and establishing the master-slave hierarchy terminate in the protocol engine of a boundary clock and are not forwarded.

Transparent clock

Forwards all PTP messages like an ordinary switch or router but measures the residence time of a packet in the switch (the time that the packet takes to traverse the transparent clock) and in some cases the link delay of the ingress port for the packet. The ports have no state because the transparent clock does not need to synchronize to the grandmaster clock.

There are two kinds of transparent clocks:

End-to-end transparent clock

Measures the residence time of a PTP message and accumulates the times in the correction field of the PTP message or an associated follow-up message.

Peer-to-peer transparent clock

Measures the residence time of a PTP message and computes the link delay between each port and a similarly equipped port on another node that shares the link. For a packet, this incoming link delay is added to the residence time in the correction field of the PTP message or an associated follow-up message.



Note PTP operates only in boundary clock mode. We recommend that you deploy a Grand Master Clock (10 MHz) upstream. The servers contain clocks that require synchronization and are connected to the switch.

End-to-end transparent clock and peer-to-peer transparent clock modes are not supported.

PTP Process

The PTP process consists of two phases: establishing the master-slave hierarchy and synchronizing the clocks.

Within a PTP domain, each port of an ordinary or boundary clock follows this process to determine its state:

- Examines the contents of all received announce messages (issued by ports in the master state)
- Compares the data sets of the foreign master (in the announce message) and the local clock for priority, clock class, accuracy, and so on
- Determines its own state as either master or slave

After the master-slave hierarchy has been established, the clocks are synchronized as follows:

- The master sends a synchronization message to the slave and notes the time it was sent.
- The slave receives the synchronization message and notes the time that it was received. For every synchronization message, there is a follow-up message. The number of sync messages should be equal to the number of follow-up messages.
- The slave sends a delay-request message to the master and notes the time it was sent.
- The master receives the delay-request message and notes the time it was received.
- The master sends a delay-response message to the slave. The number of delay request messages should be equal to the number of delay response messages.
- The slave uses these timestamps to adjust its clock to the time of its master.

Clock Management

By default, Cisco NX-OS uses NTP to update the system clock. However, if the **clock protocol** property is configured to **PTP**, PTP is allowed to update the system clock.

If PTP is enabled, NTP does not update the system time.

High Availability for PTP

Stateful restarts are supported for PTP. After a reboot or a supervisor switchover, the running configuration is applied.

Licensing Requirements for PTP

PTP requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for PTP

- PTP operates only in boundary clock mode. End-to-end transparent clock and peer-to-peer transparent clock modes are not supported.
- PTP supports transport over User Datagram Protocol (UDP). Transport over Ethernet is not supported.
- PTP supports only multicast communication. Negotiated unicast communication is not supported.
- PTP is limited to a single domain per network.
- All management messages are forwarded on ports on which PTP is enabled. Handling management messages is not supported.
- PTP is only configurable on switch ports. Configuring PTP on FEX ports is not supported.
- PTP-capable ports do not identify PTP packets and do not time-stamp or redirect those packets unless you enable PTP on those ports.
- PTP is only supported on physical Ethernet-based ports.
- In VPC environments, PTP must be individually configured on each member port.
- PTP over FabricPath is not supported.

Default Settings for PTP

The following table lists the default settings for PTP parameters.

Table 3: Default PTP Parameters

Parameters	Default
PTP	Disabled
PTP version	2
PTP domain	0. PTP multi domain is disabled by default.

Parameters	Default
PTP priority 1 value when advertising the clock	255
PTP priority 2 value when advertising the clock	255
PTP announce interval	1 log second
PTP sync interval	0 log seconds
PTP announce timeout	3 announce intervals
PTP minimum delay request interval	0 log seconds
PTP VLAN	1

Configuring PTP

Configuring PTP Globally

You can enable or disable PTP globally on a device. You can also configure various PTP clock parameters to help determine which clock in the network has the highest priority to be selected as the grandmaster.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # [no] feature ptp	Enables or disables PTP on the device. Note Enabling PTP on the switch does not enable PTP on each interface.
Step 3	switch(config) # [no] ptp source ip-address [vrf vrf]	Configures the source IP address for all PTP packets. The <i>ip-address</i> can be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config) # [no] ptp domain number	Configures the domain number to use for this clock. PTP domains allow you to use multiple independent PTP clocking subdomains on a single network. The range for the <i>number</i> is from 0 to 128.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config) # [no] ptp priority1 value	Configures the priority1 value to use when advertising this clock. This value overrides the default criteria (clock quality, clock class, and so on) for the best master clock selection. Lower values take precedence.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The range for the <i>value</i> is from 0 to 255.
Step 6	(Optional) switch(config) # [no] ptp priority2 <i>value</i>	Configures the priority2 value to use when advertising this clock. This value is used to decide between two devices that are otherwise equally matched in the default criteria. For example, you can use the priority2 value to give a specific switch priority over other identical switches. The range for the <i>value</i> is from 0 to 255.
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config) # show ptp brief	Displays the PTP status.
Step 8	(Optional) switch(config) # show ptp clock	Displays the properties of the local clock.
Step 9	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure PTP globally on the device, specify the source IP address for PTP communications, and configure a preference level for the clock:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# feature ptp
switch(config)# ptp source 10.10.10.1
switch(config)# ptp priority1 1
switch(config)# ptp priority2 1
switch(config)# show ptp brief
PTP port status
-----
Port State
-----
switch(config)# show ptp clock
PTP Device Type: Boundary clock
Clock Identity : 0:22:55:ff:ff:79:a4:c1
Clock Domain: 0
Number of PTP ports: 0
Priority1 : 1
Priority2 : 1
Clock Quality:
Class : 248
Accuracy : 254
Offset (log variance) : 65535
Offset From Master : 0
Mean Path Delay : 0
Steps removed : 0
Local clock time:Sun Jul 3 14:13:24 2011
switch(config)#
```

Configuring PTP on an Interface

After you globally enable PTP, it is not enabled on all supported interfaces by default. You must enable PTP interfaces individually.

Before you begin

Make sure that you have globally enabled PTP on the switch and configured the source IP address for PTP communication.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # interface ethernet slot/port	Specifies the interface on which you are enabling PTP and enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-if) # [no] feature ptp	Enables or disables PTP on an interface.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config-if) # [no] ptp announce {interval log seconds timeout count}	Configures the interval between PTP announce messages on an interface or the number of PTP intervals before a timeout occurs on an interface. The range for the PTP announcement interval is from 0 to 4 seconds, and the range for the interval timeout is from 2 to 10.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config-if) # [no] ptp delay request minimum interval log seconds	Configures the minimum interval allowed between PTP delay-request messages when the port is in the master state. The range is from log(-6) to log(1) seconds. Where, log(-2) = 2 frames per second.
Step 6	(Optional) switch(config-if) # [no] ptp sync interval log seconds	Configures the interval between PTP synchronization messages on an interface. The range for the ptp sync interval is from -3 seconds to 1 second.
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config-if) # [no] ptp vlan vlan-id	Specifies the VLAN for the interface where PTP is being enabled. You can only enable PTP on one VLAN on an interface. The range is from 1 to 4094.
Step 8	(Optional) switch(config-if) # show ptp brief	Displays the PTP status.
Step 9	(Optional) switch(config-if) # show ptp port interface interface slot/port	Displays the status of the PTP port.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to configure PTP on an interface and configure the intervals for the announce, delay-request, and synchronization messages:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-if)# ptp
switch(config-if)# ptp announce interval 3
switch(config-if)# ptp announce timeout 2
switch(config-if)# ptp delay-request minimum interval 4
switch(config-if)# ptp sync interval -1
switch(config-if)# show ptp brief
PTP port status
-----
Port State
-----
Eth2/1 Master
switch(config-if)# show ptp port interface ethernet 1/1
PTP Port Dataset: Eth1/1
Port identity: clock identity: f4:4e:05:ff:fe:84:7e:7c
Port identity: port number: 0
PTP version: 2
Port state: Slave
VLAN info: 1
Delay request interval(log mean): 0
Announce receipt time out: 3
Peer mean path delay: 0
Announce interval(log mean): 1
Sync interval(log mean): 1
Delay Mechanism: End to End
Cost: 255
Domain: 5
switch(config-if)#
```

Verifying the PTP Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Table 4: PTP Show Commands

Command	Purpose
show ptp brief	Displays the PTP status.
show ptp clock	Displays the properties of the local clock, including the clock identity.

Command	Purpose
show ptp clock foreign-masters-record	Displays the state of foreign masters known to the PTP process. For each foreign master, the output displays the clock identity, basic clock properties, and whether the clock is being used as a grandmaster.
show ptp corrections	Displays the last few PTP corrections.
show ptp parent	Displays the properties of the PTP parent and grandmaster clock.
show ptp port interface ethernet <i>slot/port</i>	Displays the status of the PTP port on the switch.
show ptp time-property	Displays the PTP clock time properties.
show ptp domain data	Displays multiple domain data, domain priority, clock threshold and information about grandmaster capabilities.
show ptp interface domain	Displays information about the interface to domain association.
show ptp cost	Displays PTP port to cost association.



CHAPTER 7

Configuring User Accounts and RBAC

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About User Accounts and RBAC, on page 79](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts, on page 85](#)
- [Configuring User Accounts, on page 85](#)
- [Configuring RBAC, on page 87](#)
- [Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration, on page 91](#)
- [Configuring User Accounts Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC, on page 92](#)

Information About User Accounts and RBAC

Cisco Nexus Series switches use role-based access control (RBAC) to define the amount of access that each user has when the user logs into the switch.

With RBAC, you define one or more user roles and then specify which management operations each user role is allowed to perform. When you create a user account for the switch, you associate that account with a user role, which then determines what the individual user is allowed to do on the switch.

User Roles

User roles contain rules that define the operations allowed for the user who is assigned the role. Each user role can contain multiple rules and each user can have multiple roles. For example, if role1 allows access only to configuration operations, and role2 allows access only to debug operations, users who belong to both role1 and role2 can access configuration and debug operations. You can also limit access to specific VSANs, VLANs, and interfaces.

The switch provides the following default user roles:

network-admin (superuser)

Complete read and write access to the entire switch.

network-operator

Complete read access to the switch. However, the network-operator role cannot run the **show running-config** and **show startup-config** commands.



Note If you belong to multiple roles, you can execute a combination of all the commands permitted by these roles. Access to a command takes priority over being denied access to a command. For example, suppose a user has RoleA, which denied access to the configuration commands. However, the user also has RoleB, which has access to the configuration commands. In this case, the user has access to the configuration commands.



Note Only network-admin user can perform a Checkpoint or Rollback in the RBAC roles. Though other users have these commands as a permit rule in their role, the user access is denied when you try to execute these commands.

Predefined SAN Admin User Role

The SAN admin user role is a noneditable, predefined user role that is designed to provide separation between LAN and SAN administrative tasks. Users that have been assigned the SAN admin user role have read-only access to all Ethernet configuration tasks. Write access for Ethernet features is not granted to SAN admin users unless it is assigned to them through another user role.

The following capabilities are permitted to SAN admin users:

- Interface configuration
- Attribute configuration for Fibre Channel Unified Ports, except creation and deletion
- VSAN configuration, including database and membership
- Mapping of preconfigured VLANs for FCoE to VSANs
- Zoning configuration
- Configuration of SNMP-related parameters, except SNMP community and SNMP users
- Read-only access to all other configurations
- Configuration and management of SAN features such as the following:
 - FC-SP
 - FC-PORT-SECURITY
 - FCoE
 - FCoE-NPV
 - FPORT-CHANNEL-TRUNK
 - PORT-TRACK
 - FABRIC-BINDING
- Configuration and management for the following of EXEC mode commands:
 - DEBUG
 - FCDOMAIN
 - FCPING

- SAN-PORT-CHANNEL
- SHOW
- ZONE
- ZONESET



Note The SAN Admin role permits configuration on all interface types, not just Fibre Channel interfaces. The predefined SAN Admin user role was designed to allow access to all interfaces—including Ethernet interfaces—so it would not interfere with SNMP operations.

Rules

The rule is the basic element of a role. A rule defines what operations the role allows the user to perform. You can apply rules for the following parameters:

Command

A command or group of commands defined in a regular expression.

Feature

Commands that apply to a function provided by the Cisco Nexus device. Enter the **show role feature** command to display the feature names available for this parameter.

Feature group

Default or user-defined group of features. Enter the **show role feature-group** command to display the default feature groups available for this parameter.

These parameters create a hierarchical relationship. The most basic control parameter is the command. The next control parameter is the feature, which represents all commands associated with the feature. The last control parameter is the feature group. The feature group combines related features and allows you to easily manage the rules.

You can configure up to 256 rules for each role. The user-specified rule number determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

SAN Admin Role-Feature Rule Mapping

The SAN admin role is not editable. The following role-features are part of preconfigured role. The preconfigured role comes complete read access and the following rules:

Table 5: Role-Feature Rules for SAN Admin User Role

Feature	Permissions
copy	Read and write permissions for copy-related commands

Feature	Permissions
fabric-binding	Read and write permissions for fabric binding-related commands
fcdomain	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel domain-related commands
fcfe	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel FE-related commands
fcmgmt	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel management-related commands
fens	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel-related service FCNS commands
fcoe	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel over Ethernet-related commands
fcsp	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel Security Protocol (FCSP)-related commands
fdmi	Read and write permissions for Fabric Device Management Interface (FDMI)-related commands
fspf	Read and write permissions for Fabric Shortest Path First (FSPF)-related commands
interface	Read and write permissions for interface-related commands, which includes all interfaces, not just Fibre Channel interfaces.
port-track	Read and write permissions for port track-related commands
port-security	Read and write permissions for port security-related commands
rdl	Read and write permissions for Remote Domain Loopback (RDL)-related commands
rmon	Read and write permissions for RMON-related commands
rscn	Read and write permissions for Registered State Change Notification (RSCN)-related commands
snmp	Read and write permissions for SNMP-related commands
snmpTargetAddrEntry	Read and write permissions for SNMP trap target-related commands

Feature	Permissions
snmpTargetParamsEntry	Read and write permissions for SNMP trap target parameter-related commands
span	Read and write permissions for SPAN-related commands
trapRegEntry	Read and write permissions for SNMP trap registry-related commands
trunk	Read and write permissions for Fibre Channel port channel trunk-related commands
vsan	Read and write permissions for VSAN-related commands
vsanIfvsan	Read and write permissions for FCoE VLAN-VSAN mapping command-related commands
wwnm	Read and write permissions for World Wide Name (WWN)-related commands
zone	Read and write permissions for zoning commands

User Role Policies

You can define user role policies to limit the switch resources that the user can access, or to limit access to interfaces, VLANs, and VSANs.

User role policies are constrained by the rules defined for the role. For example, if you define an interface policy to permit access to specific interfaces, the user does not have access to the interfaces unless you configure a command rule for the role to permit the **interface** command.

If a command rule permits access to specific resources (interfaces, VLANs, or VSANs), the user is permitted to access these resources, even if the user is not listed in the user role policies associated with that user.

User Account Configuration Restrictions

The following words are reserved and cannot be used to configure users:

- adm
- bin
- daemon
- ftp
- ftpuser
- games
- gdm

- gopher
- halt
- lp
- mail
- mailnull
- man
- mtsuser
- news
- nobody
- san-admin
- shutdown
- sync
- sys
- uucp
- xfs

User Password Requirements

Cisco Nexus device passwords are case sensitive and can contain alphanumeric characters only. Special characters, such as the dollar sign (\$) or the percent sign (%), are not allowed.



Note Starting from Cisco NX-OS Release 7.2(0)N1(1), special characters, such as the dollar sign (\$) or the percent sign (%), can be used in Cisco Nexus device passwords.

If a password is trivial (such as a short, easy-to-decipher password), the Cisco Nexus device rejects the password. Be sure to configure a strong password for each user account. A strong password has the following characteristics:

- At least eight characters long
- Does not contain many consecutive characters (such as "abcd")
- Does not contain many repeating characters (such as "aaabbb")
- Does not contain dictionary words
- Does not contain proper names
- Contains both uppercase and lowercase characters
- Contains numbers

The following are examples of strong passwords:

- If2CoM18
- 2009AsdfLkj30
- Cb1955S21



Note For security reasons, user passwords do not display in the configuration files.

Guidelines and Limitations for User Accounts

User accounts have the following guidelines and limitations when configuring user accounts and RBAC:

- Up to 256 rules can be added to a user role.
- A maximum of 64 user roles can be assigned to a user account.
- You can assign a user role to more than one user account.
- Predefined roles such as network-admin, network-operator, and san-admin are not editable.
- Add, delete, and editing of rules is not supported for the SAN admin user role.
- The interface, VLAN, and/or VSAN scope cannot be changed for the SAN admin user role.



Note A user account must have at least one user role.

Configuring User Accounts



Note Changes to user account attributes do not take effect until the user logs in and creates a new session.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	(Optional) switch(config)# show role	Displays the user roles available. You can configure other user roles, if necessary.
Step 3	switch(config) # username user-id [password password] [expire date] [role role-name]	Configures a user account.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>The <i>user-id</i> is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 28 characters.</p> <p>The default <i>password</i> is undefined.</p> <p>Note If you do not specify a password, the user might not be able to log into the switch.</p> <p>The expire date option format is YYYY-MM-DD. The default is no expiry date.</p>
Step 4	switch(config) # exit	Exits global configuration mode.
Step 5	(Optional) switch# show user-account	Displays the role configuration.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a user account:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# username NewUser password 4Ty18Rnt
switch(config)# exit
switch# show user-account
```

Configuring SAN Admin Users

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # username <i>user-id</i> role san-admin password <i>password</i>	Configures SAN admin user role access for the specified user.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config) # show user-account	Displays the role configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config) # show snmp-user	Displays the SNMP user configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a SAN admin user and display the user account and SNMP user configuration:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# username user1 role san-admin password xyz123
switch(config)# show user-account
user:admin
    this user account has no expiry date
    roles:network-admin
user:user1
    this user account has no expiry date
    roles:san-admin
switch(config) # show snmp user
```

```
-----
SNMP USERS
-----
User      Auth  Priv(enforce)  Groups
-----
admin     md5   des(no)        network-admin
user1     md5   des(no)        san-admin
-----
NOTIFICATION TARGET USES (configured for sending V3 Inform)
-----
User      Auth  Priv
-----
switch(config) #
```

Configuring RBAC

Creating User Roles and Rules

The rule number that you specify determines the order in which the rules are applied. Rules are applied in descending order. For example, if a role has three rules, rule 3 is applied before rule 2, which is applied before rule 1.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # role name <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode. The <i>role-name</i> argument is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 16 characters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	<code>switch(config-role) # rule <i>number</i> {deny permit} command <i>command-string</i></code>	Configures a command rule. The <i>command-string</i> can contain spaces and regular expressions. For example, interface ethernet * includes all Ethernet interfaces. Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
Step 4	<code>switch(config-role)# rule <i>number</i> {deny permit} {read read-write}</code>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for all operations.
Step 5	<code>switch(config-role)# rule <i>number</i> {deny permit} {read read-write} feature <i>feature-name</i></code>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature. Use the show role feature command to display a list of features. Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
Step 6	<code>switch(config-role)# rule <i>number</i> {deny permit} {read read-write} feature-group <i>group-name</i></code>	Configures a read-only or read-and-write rule for a feature group. Use the show role feature-group command to display a list of feature groups. Repeat this command for as many rules as needed.
Step 7	(Optional) <code>switch(config-role)# description <i>text</i></code>	Configures the role description. You can include spaces in the description.
Step 8	<code>switch(config-role)# end</code>	Exits role configuration mode.
Step 9	(Optional) <code>switch# show role</code>	Displays the user role configuration.
Step 10	(Optional) <code>switch# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to create user roles and specify rules:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name UserA
switch(config-role)# rule deny command clear users
switch(config-role)# rule deny read-write
switch(config-role)# description This role does not allow users to use clear commands
switch(config-role)# end
switch(config)# show role
```

Creating Feature Groups

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # role feature-group <i>group-name</i>	Specifies a user role feature group and enters role feature group configuration mode. The <i>group-name</i> is a case-sensitive, alphanumeric character string with a maximum of 32 characters.
Step 3	switch(config) # exit	Exits global configuration mode.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show role feature-group	Displays the role feature group configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to create a feature group:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # role feature-group group1
switch(config) # exit
switch# show role feature-group
switch# copy running-config startup-config
switch#
```

Changing User Role Interface Policies

You can change a user role interface policy to limit the interfaces that the user can access. Specify a list of interfaces that the role can access. You can specify it for as many interfaces as needed.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # role name <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-role) # interface policy deny	Enters role interface policy configuration mode.
Step 4	switch(config-role-interface) # permit interface <i>interface-list</i>	Specifies a list of interfaces that the role can access.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Repeat this command for as many interfaces as needed. For this command, you can specify Ethernet interfaces, Fibre Channel interfaces, and virtual Fibre Channel interfaces.
Step 5	switch(config-role-interface) # exit	Exits role interface policy configuration mode.
Step 6	(Optional) switch(config-role) # show role	Displays the role configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config-role) # copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to change a user role interface policy to limit the interfaces that the user can access:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# role name UserB
switch(config-role)# interface policy deny
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface ethernet 2/1
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface fc 3/1
switch(config-role-interface)# permit interface vfc 30/1
```

Changing User Role VLAN Policies

You can change a user role VLAN policy to limit the VLANs that the user can access.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # role name <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-role) # vlan policy deny	Enters role VLAN policy configuration mode.
Step 4	switch(config-role-vlan) # permit vlan <i>vlan-list</i>	Specifies a range of VLANs that the role can access. Repeat this command for as many VLANs as needed.
Step 5	switch(config-role-vlan) # exit	Exits role VLAN policy configuration mode.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# show role	Displays the role configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Changing User Role VSAN Policies

You can change a user role VSAN policy to limit the VSANs that the user can access.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config-role) # role name <i>role-name</i>	Specifies a user role and enters role configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-role) # vsan policy deny	Enters role VSAN policy configuration mode.
Step 4	switch(config-role-vsan) # permit vsan <i>vsan-list</i>	Specifies a range of VSANs that the role can access. Repeat this command for as many VSANs as needed.
Step 5	switch(config-role-vsan) # exit	Exits role VSAN policy configuration mode.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# show role	Displays the role configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying the User Accounts and RBAC Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
show role [<i>role-name</i>]	Displays the user role configuration
show role feature	Displays the feature list.
show role feature-group	Displays the feature group configuration.
show startup-config security	Displays the user account configuration in the startup configuration.
show running-config security [all]	Displays the user account configuration in the running configuration. The all keyword displays the default values for the user accounts.

Command	Purpose
show user-account	Displays user account information.

Configuring User Accounts Default Settings for the User Accounts and RBAC

The following table lists the default settings for user accounts and RBAC parameters.

Table 6: Default User Accounts and RBAC Parameters

Parameters	Default
User account password	Undefined.
User account expiry date	None.
Interface policy	All interfaces are accessible.
VLAN policy	All VLANs are accessible.
VFC policy	All VFCs are accessible.
VETH policy	All VETHs are accessible.



CHAPTER 8

Configuring Session Manager

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Session Manager, on page 93](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager, on page 93](#)
- [Configuring Session Manager, on page 94](#)
- [Verifying the Session Manager Configuration, on page 96](#)

Information About Session Manager

Session Manager allows you to implement your configuration changes in batch mode. Session Manager works in the following phases:

- **Configuration session**—Creates a list of commands that you want to implement in session manager mode.
- **Validation**—Provides a basic semantic check on your configuration. Cisco NX-OS returns an error if the semantic check fails on any part of the configuration.
- **Verification**—Verifies the configuration as a whole, based on the existing hardware and software configuration and resources. Cisco NX-OS returns an error if the configuration does not pass this verification phase.
- **Commit**—Cisco NX-OS verifies the complete configuration and implements the changes atomically to the device. If a failure occurs, Cisco NX-OS reverts to the original configuration.
- **Abort**—Discards the configuration changes before implementation.

You can optionally end a configuration session without committing the changes. You can also save a configuration session.

Guidelines and Limitations for Session Manager

Session Manager has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- Session Manager supports only the access control list (ACL) feature.
- You can create up to 32 configuration sessions.
- You can configure a maximum of 20,000 commands across all sessions.

Configuring Session Manager

Creating a Session

You can create up to 32 configuration sessions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure session <i>name</i>	Creates a configuration session and enters session configuration mode. The name can be any alphanumeric string. Displays the contents of the session.
Step 2	(Optional) switch(config-s)# show configuration session [<i>name</i>]	Displays the contents of the session.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config-s)# save <i>location</i>	Saves the session to a file. The location can be in bootflash or volatile.

Configuring ACLs in a Session

You can configure ACLs within a configuration session.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure session <i>name</i>	Creates a configuration session and enters session configuration mode. The name can be any alphanumeric string.
Step 2	switch(config-s)# ip access-list <i>name</i>	Creates an ACL.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config-s-acl)# permit <i>protocol source destination</i>	Adds a permit statement to the ACL.
Step 4	switch(config-s-acl)# interface <i>interface-type number</i>	Enters interface configuration mode.
Step 5	switch(config-s-if)# ip port access-group <i>name</i> in	Adds a port access group to the interface.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# show configuration session [<i>name</i>]	Displays the contents of the session.

Verifying a Session

To verify a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# verify [verbose]	Verifies the commands in the configuration session.

Committing a Session

To commit a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# commit [verbose]	Commits the commands in the configuration session.

Saving a Session

To save a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# save <i>location</i>	(Optional) Saves the session to a file. The location can be in bootflash or volatile.

Discarding a Session

To discard a session, use the following command in session mode:

Command	Purpose
switch(config-s)# abort	Discards the configuration session without applying the commands.

Configuration Example for Session Manager

The following example shows how to create a configuration session for ACLs:

```
switch# configure session name test2
switch(config-s) # ip access-list acl2
switch(config-s-acl) # permit tcp any any
switch(config-s-acl) # exit
switch(config-s) # interface Ethernet 1/4
switch(config-s-ip) # ip port access-group acl2 in
switch(config-s-ip) # exit
switch(config-s) # verify
switch(config-s) # exit
```

```
switch# show configuration session test2
```

Verifying the Session Manager Configuration

To verify Session Manager configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
<code>show configuration session [name]</code>	Displays the contents of the configuration session.
<code>show configuration session status [name]</code>	Displays the status of the configuration session.
<code>show configuration session summary</code>	Displays a summary of all the configuration sessions.



CHAPTER 9

Configuring Online Diagnostics

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Online Diagnostics, on page 97](#)
- [Configuring Online Diagnostics, on page 99](#)
- [Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration, on page 100](#)
- [Default Settings for Online Diagnostics, on page 100](#)

Information About Online Diagnostics

Online diagnostics provide verification of hardware components during switch bootup or reset, and they monitor the health of the hardware during normal switch operation.

Cisco Nexus Series switches support bootup diagnostics and runtime diagnostics. Bootup diagnostics include disruptive tests and nondisruptive tests that run during system bootup and system reset.

Runtime diagnostics (also known as health monitoring diagnostics) include nondisruptive tests that run in the background during normal operation of the switch.

Bootup Diagnostics

Bootup diagnostics detect faulty hardware before bringing the switch online. Bootup diagnostics also check the data path and control path connectivity between the supervisor and the ASICs. The following table describes the diagnostics that are run only during switch bootup or reset.

Table 7: Bootup Diagnostics

Diagnostic	Description
PCIe	Tests PCI express (PCIe) access.
NVRAM	Verifies the integrity of the NVRAM.
In band port	Tests connectivity of the inband port to the supervisor.
Management port	Tests the management port.
Memory	Verifies the integrity of the DRAM.

Bootup diagnostics also include a set of tests that are common with health monitoring diagnostics.

Bootup diagnostics log any failures to the onboard failure logging (OBFL) system. Failures also trigger an LED display to indicate diagnostic test states (on, off, pass, or fail).

You can configure Cisco Nexus device to either bypass the bootup diagnostics or run the complete set of bootup diagnostics.

Health Monitoring Diagnostics

Health monitoring diagnostics provide information about the health of the switch. They detect runtime hardware errors, memory errors, software faults, and resource exhaustion.

Health monitoring diagnostics are nondisruptive and run in the background to ensure the health of a switch that is processing live network traffic.

The following table describes the health monitoring diagnostics for the switch.

Table 8: Health Monitoring Diagnostics Tests

Diagnostic	Description
LED	Monitors port and system status LEDs.
Power Supply	Monitors the power supply health state.
Temperature Sensor	Monitors temperature sensor readings.
Test Fan	Monitors the fan speed and fan control.

The following table describes the health monitoring diagnostics that also run during system boot or system reset.

Table 9: Health Monitoring and Bootup Diagnostics Tests

Diagnostic	Description
SPROM	Verifies the integrity of backplane and supervisor SPROMs.
Fabric engine	Tests the switch fabric ASICs.
Fabric port	Tests the ports on the switch fabric ASIC.
Forwarding engine	Tests the forwarding engine ASICs.
Forwarding engine port	Tests the ports on the forwarding engine ASICs.
Front port	Tests the components (such as PHY and MAC) on the front ports.

Expansion Module Diagnostics

During the switch bootup or reset, the bootup diagnostics include tests for the in-service expansion modules in the switch.

When you insert an expansion module into a running switch, a set of diagnostics tests are run. The following table describes the bootup diagnostics for an expansion module. These tests are common with the bootup diagnostics. If the bootup diagnostics fail, the expansion module is not placed into service.

Table 10: Expansion Module Bootup and Health Monitoring Diagnostics

Diagnostic	Description
SPROM	Verifies the integrity of backplane and supervisor SPROMs.
Fabric engine	Tests the switch fabric ASICs.
Fabric port	Tests the ports on the switch fabric ASIC.
Forwarding engine	Tests the forwarding engine ASICs.
Forwarding engine port	Tests the ports on the forwarding engine ASICs.
Front port	Tests the components (such as PHY and MAC) on the front ports.

Health monitoring diagnostics are run on in-service expansion modules. The following table describes the additional tests that are specific to health monitoring diagnostics for expansion modules.

Table 11: Expansion Module Health Monitoring Diagnostics

Diagnostic	Description
LED	Monitors port and system status LEDs.
Temperature Sensor	Monitors temperature sensor readings.

Configuring Online Diagnostics

You can configure the bootup diagnostics to run the complete set of tests, or you can bypass all bootup diagnostic tests for a faster module boot up time.



Note We recommend that you set the bootup online diagnostics level to complete. We do not recommend bypassing the bootup online diagnostics.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# diagnostic bootup level [complete bypass]	Configures the bootup diagnostic level to trigger diagnostics when the device boots, as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • complete—Performs all bootup diagnostics. This is the default value.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> bypass—Does not perform any bootup diagnostics.
Step 3	(Optional) switch# show diagnostic bootup level	Displays the bootup diagnostic level (bypass or complete) that is currently in place on the switch.

Example

The following example shows how to configure the bootup diagnostics level to trigger the complete diagnostics:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# diagnostic bootup level complete
```

Verifying the Online Diagnostics Configuration

Use the following commands to verify online diagnostics configuration information:

Command	Purpose
show diagnostic bootup level	Displays the bootup diagnostics level.
show diagnostic result module slot	Displays the results of the diagnostics tests.

Default Settings for Online Diagnostics

The following table lists the default settings for online diagnostics parameters.

Table 12: Default Online Diagnostics Parameters

Parameters	Default
Bootup diagnostics level	complete



CHAPTER 10

Configuring System Message Logging

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About System Message Logging, on page 101](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for System Message Logging, on page 102](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for System Message Logging, on page 102](#)
- [Default Settings for System Message Logging, on page 102](#)
- [Configuring System Message Logging, on page 103](#)
- [Configuring DOM Logging, on page 116](#)
- [Verifying the System Message Logging Configuration, on page 117](#)

Information About System Message Logging

You can use system message logging to control the destination and to filter the severity level of messages that system processes generate. You can configure logging to terminal sessions, a log file, and syslog servers on remote systems.

System message logging is based on [RFC 3164](#). For more information about the system message format and the messages that the device generates, see the *Cisco NX-OS System Messages Reference*.

By default, the Cisco Nexus device outputs messages to terminal sessions.

By default, the switch logs system messages to a log file.

The following table describes the severity levels used in system messages. When you configure the severity level, the system outputs messages at that level and lower.

Table 13: System Message Severity Levels

Level	Description
0 – emergency	System unusable
1 – alert	Immediate action needed
2 – critical	Critical condition
3 – error	Error condition
4 – warning	Warning condition

Level	Description
5 – notification	Normal but significant condition
6 – informational	Informational message only
7 – debugging	Appears during debugging only

The switch logs the most recent 100 messages of severity 0, 1, or 2 to the NVRAM log. You cannot configure logging to the NVRAM.

You can configure which system messages should be logged based on the facility that generated the message and its severity level.

Syslog Servers

Syslog servers run on remote systems that are configured to log system messages based on the syslog protocol. You can configure the Cisco Nexus Series switch to send logs to up to eight syslog servers.

To support the same configuration of syslog servers on all switches in a fabric, you can use Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) to distribute the syslog server configuration.



Note When the switch first initializes, messages are sent to syslog servers only after the network is initialized.

Licensing Requirements for System Message Logging

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	System message logging requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide</i> .

Guidelines and Limitations for System Message Logging

System messages are logged to the console and the logfile by default.

Default Settings for System Message Logging

The following table lists the default settings for system message logging parameters.

Table 14: Default System Message Logging Parameters

Parameters	Default
Console logging	Enabled at severity level 2
Monitor logging	Enabled at severity level 2
Log file logging	Enabled to log messages at severity level 5
Module logging	Enabled at severity level 5
Facility logging	Enabled
Time-stamp units	Seconds
Syslog server logging	Disabled
Syslog server configuration distribution	Disabled

Configuring System Message Logging

Configuring System Message Logging to Terminal Sessions

You can configure the switch to log messages by their severity level to console, Telnet, and Secure Shell sessions.

By default, logging is enabled for terminal sessions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# terminal monitor	Copies syslog messages from the console to the current terminal session.
Step 2	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config)# logging console [<i>severity-level</i>]	Enables the switch to log messages to the console session based on a specified severity level or higher (a lower number value indicates a higher severity level). Severity levels range from 0 to 7: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 – emergency • 1 – alert • 2 – critical • 3 – error

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4 – warning • 5 – notification • 6 – informational • 7 – debugging <p>If the severity level is not specified, the default of 2 is used.</p>
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# no logging console [severity-level]	Disables logging messages to the console.
Step 5	switch(config)# logging monitor [severity-level]	<p>Enables the switch to log messages to the monitor based on a specified severity level or higher (a lower number value indicates a higher severity level). Severity levels range from 0 to 7:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 – emergency • 1 – alert • 2 – critical • 3 – error • 4 – warning • 5 – notification • 6 – informational • 7 – debugging <p>If the severity level is not specified, the default of 2 is used.</p> <p>The configuration applies to Telnet and SSH sessions.</p>
Step 6	(Optional) switch(config)# no logging monitor [severity-level]	Disables logging messages to Telnet and SSH sessions.
Step 7	(Optional) switch# show logging console	Displays the console logging configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) switch# show logging monitor	Displays the monitor logging configuration.
Step 9	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a logging level of 3 for the console:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging console 3
```

The following example shows how to display the console logging configuration:

```
switch# show logging console
Logging console:                enabled (Severity: error)
```

The following example shows how to disable logging for the console:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no logging console
```

The following example shows how to configure a logging level of 4 for the terminal session:

```
switch# terminal monitor
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging monitor 4
```

The following example shows how to display the terminal session logging configuration:

```
switch# show logging monitor
Logging monitor:                enabled (Severity: warning)
```

The following example shows how to disable logging for the terminal session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no logging monitor
```

Configuring System Message Logging to a File

You can configure the switch to log system messages to a file. By default, system messages are logged to the file log.messages.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# logging logfile <i>logfile-name</i> <i>severity-level</i> [size bytes]	Configures the name of the log file used to store system messages and the minimum severity level to log. You can optionally specify a maximum file size. The default severity level is 5 and the file size is 4194304. When you configure a new logfile without specifying the size, the existing/previously specified logfile size is assigned and the default file size is not considered.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		Severity levels range from 0 to 7: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 – emergency • 1 – alert • 2 – critical • 3 – error • 4 – warning • 5 – notification • 6 – informational • 7 – debugging The file size is from 4096 to 10485760 bytes.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# no logging logfile [logfile-name severity-level [size bytes]]	Disables logging to the log file. You can optionally specify a maximum file size. The default severity level is 5 and the file size is 4194304.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show logging info	Displays the logging configuration. You can optionally specify a maximum file size. The default severity level is 5 and the file size is 4194304.
Step 5	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a switch to log system messages to a file:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging logfile my_log 6 size 4194304
```

The following example shows how to display the logging configuration (some of the output has been removed for brevity):

```
switch# show logging info
Logging console:          enabled (Severity: debugging)
Logging monitor:         enabled (Severity: debugging)
Logging linecard:        enabled (Severity: notifications)
Logging fex:             enabled (Severity: notifications)
Logging timestamp:       Seconds
Logging server:          disabled
Logging logfile:         enabled
                          Name - my_log: Severity - informational Size - 4194304
Facility      Default Severity      Current Session Severity
-----
aaa           3           3
aclmgr           3           3
```

afm	3	3
altos	3	3
auth	0	0
authpriv	3	3
bootvar	5	5
callhome	2	2
capability	2	2
cdp	2	2
cert_enroll	2	2
...		

Configuring Module and Facility Messages Logging

You can configure the severity level and time-stamp units of messages logged by modules and facilities.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# logging module [<i>severity-level</i>]	<p>Enables module log messages that have the specified severity level or higher. Severity levels range from 0 to 7:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 – emergency • 1 – alert • 2 – critical • 3 – error • 4 – warning • 5 – notification • 6 – informational • 7 – debugging <p>If the severity level is not specified, the default of 5 is used.</p>
Step 3	switch(config)# logging level <i>facility severity-level</i>	<p>Enables logging messages from the specified facility that have the specified severity level or higher. Severity levels from 0 to 7:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 – emergency • 1 – alert • 2 – critical • 3 – error • 4 – warning

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 5 – notification • 6 – informational • 7 – debugging <p>To apply the same severity level to all facilities, use the all facility. For defaults, see the show logging level command.</p> <p>Note If the default severity and current session severity of a component is the same, then the logging level for the component will not be displayed in the running configuration.</p>
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# no logging module [severity-level]	Disables module log messages.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# no logging level [facility severity-level]	Resets the logging severity level for the specified facility to its default level. If you do not specify a facility and severity level, the switch resets all facilities to their default levels.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# show logging module	Displays the module logging configuration.
Step 7	(Optional) switch# show logging level [facility]	Displays the logging level configuration and the system default level by facility. If you do not specify a facility, the switch displays levels for all facilities.
Step 8	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure the severity level of module and specific facility messages:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging module 3
switch(config)# logging level aaa 2
```

Configuring Logging Timestamps

You can configure the time-stamp units of messages logged by the Cisco Nexus Series switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# logging timestamp {microseconds milliseconds seconds}	Sets the logging time-stamp units. By default, the units are seconds.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# no logging timestamp {microseconds milliseconds seconds}	Resets the logging time-stamp units to the default of seconds.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show logging timestamp	Displays the logging time-stamp units configured.
Step 5	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure the time-stamp units of messages:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging timestamp milliseconds
switch(config)# exit
switch# show logging timestamp
Logging timestamp:                Milliseconds
```

Configuring the ACL Logging Cache

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache entries <i>num_entries</i>	Sets the maximum number of log entries cached in software. The range is from 0 to 1000000 entries. The default value is 8000 entries.
Step 3	switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache interval <i>seconds</i>	Sets the number of seconds between log updates. Also if an entry is inactive for this duration, it is removed from the cache. The range is from 5 to 86400 seconds. The default value is 300 seconds.
Step 4	switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache threshold <i>num_packets</i>	Sets the number of packet matches before an entry is logged. The range is from 0 to 1000000 packets. The default value is 0 packets, which means that logging is not triggered by the number of packet matches.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example show how to set the maximum number of log entries to 5000, the interval to 120 seconds, and the threshold to 500000:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache entries 5000
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache interval 120
switch(config)# logging ip access-list cache threshold 500000
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Applying ACL Logging to an Interface

Before you begin

- Create an IP access list with at least one access control entry (ACE) configured for logging.
- Configure the ACL logging cache.
- Configure the ACL log match level.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface mgmt0	Specifies the mgmt0 interface.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# ip access-group name in	Enables ACL logging on ingress traffic for the specified interface.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to apply the mgmt0 interface with the logging specified in acl1 for all ingress traffic:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface mgmt0
switch(config-if)# ip access-group acl1 in
switch(config-if)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configuring the ACL Log Match Level

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<code>switch# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<code>switch(config)# aclog match-log-level <i>number</i></code>	Specifies the logging level to match for entries to be logged in the ACL log (aclog). The <i>number</i> is a value from 0 to 7. The default is 6. Note For log messages to be entered in the logs, the logging level for the ACL log facility (aclog) and the logging severity level for the logfile must be greater than or equal to the ACL log match log level setting. For more information, see Configuring Module and Facility Messages Logging, on page 107 and Configuring System Message Logging to a File, on page 105 .
Step 3	(Optional) <code>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring Syslog Servers

You can configure up to eight syslog servers that reference remote systems where you want to log system messages.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<code>configure terminal</code> Example: <code>switch# configure terminal</code> <code>switch(config)#</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<code>logging server <i>host</i> [<i>severity-level</i> [use-vrf <i>vrf-name</i> [facility <i>facility</i>]]]</code> Example: <code>switch(config)# logging server</code> <code>172.28.254.254 5</code> <code>use-vrf default facility local3</code>	Configures a host to receive syslog messages. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The <i>host</i> argument identifies the hostname or the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the syslog server host. • The <i>severity-level</i> argument limits the logging of messages to the syslog server to a specified level. Severity levels range

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>from 0 to 7. See Table 13: System Message Severity Levels, on page 101.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The use vrf vrf-name keyword and argument identify the <i>default</i> or <i>management</i> values for the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) name. If a specific VRF is not identified, management is the default. However, if management is configured, it will not be listed in the output of the show-running command because it is the default. If a specific VRF is configured, the show-running command output will list the VRF for each server. <p>Note The current Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) distribution does not support VRF. If CFS distribution is enabled, the logging server configured with the default VRF is distributed as the management VRF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The facility argument names the syslog facility type. The default outgoing facility is local7. <p>The facilities are listed in the command reference for the Cisco Nexus Series software that you are using.</p> <p>Note Debugging is a CLI facility but the debug syslogs are not sent to the server.</p>
Step 3	<p>(Optional) no logging server host</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# no logging server 172.28.254.254 5</pre>	Removes the logging server for the specified host.
Step 4	<p>(Optional) show logging server</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch# show logging server</pre>	Displays the syslog server configuration.
Step 5	<p>(Optional) copy running-config startup-config</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following examples show how to configure a syslog server:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging server 172.28.254.254 5
use-vrf default facility local3
```

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# logging server 172.28.254.254 5 use-vrf management facility local3
```

Configuring syslog on a UNIX or Linux System

You can configure a syslog server on a UNIX or Linux system by adding the following line to the `/etc/syslog.conf` file:

```
facility.level <five tab characters> action
```

The following table describes the syslog fields that you can configure.

Table 15: syslog Fields in syslog.conf

Field	Description
Facility	Creator of the message, which can be auth, authpriv, cron, daemon, kern, lpr, mail, mark, news, syslog, user, local0 through local7, or an asterisk (*) for all. These facility designators allow you to control the destination of messages based on their origin. Note Check your configuration before using a local facility.
Level	Minimum severity level at which messages are logged, which can be debug, info, notice, warning, err, crit, alert, emerg, or an asterisk (*) for all. You can use none to disable a facility.
Action	Destination for messages, which can be a filename, a hostname preceded by the at sign (@), or a comma-separated list of users or an asterisk (*) for all logged-in users.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Log debug messages with the local7 facility in the file `/var/log/myfile.log` by adding the following line to the `/etc/syslog.conf` file:
- ```
debug.local7 /var/log/myfile.log
```
- Step 2** Create the log file by entering these commands at the shell prompt:
- ```
$ touch /var/log/myfile.log
$ chmod 666 /var/log/myfile.log
```
- Step 3** Make sure that the system message logging daemon reads the new changes by checking `myfile.log` after entering this command:

```
$ kill -HUP ~cat /etc/syslog.pid~
```

Configuring syslog Server Configuration Distribution

You can distribute the syslog server configuration to other switches in the network by using the Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) infrastructure.

After you enable syslog server configuration distribution, you can modify the syslog server configuration and view the pending changes before committing the configuration for distribution. As long as distribution is enabled, the switch maintains pending changes to the syslog server configuration.



Note If the switch is restarted, the syslog server configuration changes that are kept in volatile memory might get lost.

Before you begin

You must have configured one or more syslog servers.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# logging distribute	Enables distribution of the syslog server configuration to network switches using the CFS infrastructure. By default, distribution is disabled.
Step 3	switch(config)# logging commit	Commits the pending changes to the syslog server configuration for distribution to the switches in the fabric.
Step 4	switch(config)# logging abort	Cancels the pending changes to the syslog server configuration.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# no logging distribute	Disables the distribution of the syslog server configuration to network switches using the CFS infrastructure. You cannot disable distribution when configuration changes are pending. See the logging commit and logging abort commands. By default, distribution is disabled.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# show logging pending	Displays the pending changes to the syslog server configuration.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	(Optional) switch# show logging pending-diff	Displays the differences from the current syslog server configuration to the pending changes of the syslog server configuration.
Step 8	(Optional) switch# show logging internal info	Displays information about the current state of the syslog server distribution and the last action taken.
Step 9	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Displaying and Clearing Log Files

You can display or clear messages in the log file and the NVRAM.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# show logging last <i>number-lines</i>	Displays the last number of lines in the logging file. You can specify from 1 to 9999 for the last number of lines.
Step 2	switch# show logging logfile [start-time <i>yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss</i>] [end-time <i>yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss</i>]	Displays the messages in the log file that have a time stamp within the span entered. If you do not enter an end time, the current time is used. You enter three characters for the month time field and digits for the year and day time fields.
Step 3	switch# show logging nvram [last <i>number-lines</i>]	Displays the messages in the NVRAM. To limit the number of lines displayed, you can enter the last number of lines to display. You can specify from 1 to 100 for the last number of lines.
Step 4	switch# clear logging logfile	Clears the contents of the log file.
Step 5	switch# clear logging nvram	Clears the logged messages in NVRAM.

Example

The following example shows how to display messages in a log file:

```
switch# show logging last 40
switch# show logging logfile start-time 2007 nov 1 15:10:0
switch# show logging nvram last 10
```

The following example shows how to clear messages in a log file:

```
switch# clear logging logfile
```

```
switch# clear logging nvram
```

Configuring DOM Logging

Enabling DOM Logging

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# system ethernet dom polling	Enables transceiver digital optical monitoring periodic polling.

Example

The following example shows how to enable DOM logging.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# system ethernet dom polling
```

Disabling DOM Logging

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# no system ethernet dom polling	Disables transceiver digital optical monitoring periodic polling.

Example

The following example shows how to disable DOM logging.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no system ethernet dom polling
```

Verifying the DOM Logging Configuration

Command	Purpose
<code>show system ethernet dom polling status</code>	Displays the transceiver digital optical monitoring periodic polling status.

Verifying the System Message Logging Configuration

Use these commands to verify system message logging configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<code>show logging console</code>	Displays the console logging configuration.
<code>show logging info</code>	Displays the logging configuration.
<code>show logging internal info</code>	Displays the syslog distribution information.
<code>show logging ip access-list cache</code>	Displays the IP access list cache.
<code>show logging ip access-list cache detail</code>	Displays detailed information about the IP access list cache.
<code>show logging ip access-list status</code>	Displays the status of the IP access list cache.
<code>show logging last <i>number-lines</i></code>	Displays the last number of lines of the log file.
<code>show logging level [<i>facility</i>]</code>	Displays the facility logging severity level configuration.
<code>show logging logfile [<i>start-time yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss</i>] [<i>end-time yyyy mmm dd hh:mm:ss</i>]</code>	Displays the messages in the log file.
<code>show logging module</code>	Displays the module logging configuration.
<code>show logging monitor</code>	Displays the monitor logging configuration.
<code>show logging nvram [<i>last number-lines</i>]</code>	Displays the messages in the NVRAM log.
<code>show logging pending</code>	Displays the syslog server pending distribution configuration.
<code>show logging pending-diff</code>	Displays the syslog server pending distribution configuration differences.
<code>show logging server</code>	Displays the syslog server configuration.
<code>show logging session</code>	Displays the logging session status.
<code>show logging status</code>	Displays the logging status.
<code>show logging timestamp</code>	Displays the logging time-stamp units configuration.
<code>show running-config aclog</code>	Displays the running configuration for the ACL log file.



CHAPTER 11

Configuring Smart Call Home

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Smart Call Home, on page 119](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for Smart Call Home, on page 127](#)
- [Prerequisites for Smart Call Home, on page 127](#)
- [Default Call Home Settings, on page 127](#)
- [Configuring Smart Call Home, on page 128](#)
- [Verifying the Smart Call Home Configuration, on page 138](#)
- [Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Full-Text Format, on page 138](#)
- [Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format, on page 139](#)

Information About Smart Call Home

Smart Call Home provides e-mail-based notification of critical system events. Cisco Nexus Series switches provide a range of message formats for optimal compatibility with pager services, standard e-mail, or XML-based automated parsing applications. You can use this feature to page a network support engineer, e-mail a Network Operations Center, or use Cisco Smart Call Home services to automatically generate a case with the Technical Assistance Center (TAC).

If you have a service contract directly with Cisco, you can register your devices for the Smart Call Home service. Smart Call Home provides fast resolution of system problems by analyzing Smart Call Home messages sent from your devices and providing background information and recommendations. For issues that can be identified as known, particularly GOLD diagnostics failures, Automatic Service Requests will be generated by the Cisco TAC.

Smart Call Home offers the following features:

- Continuous device health monitoring and real-time diagnostic alerts.
- Analysis of Smart Call Home messages from your device and, where appropriate, Automatic Service Request generation, routed to the appropriate TAC team, including detailed diagnostic information to speed problem resolution.
- Secure message transport directly from your device or through a downloadable Transport Gateway (TG) aggregation point. You can use a TG aggregation point in cases that require support for multiple devices or in cases where security requirements mandate that your devices may not be connected directly to the Internet.

- Web-based access to Smart Call Home messages and recommendations, inventory and configuration information for all Smart Call Home devices, and field notices, security advisories, and end-of-life information.

Smart Call Home Overview

You can use Smart Call Home to notify an external entity when an important event occurs on your device. Smart Call Home delivers alerts to multiple recipients that you configure in destination profiles.

Smart Call Home includes a fixed set of predefined alerts on your switch. These alerts are grouped into alert groups and CLI commands that are assigned to execute when an alert in an alert group occurs. The switch includes the command output in the transmitted Smart Call Home message.

The Smart Call Home feature offers the following:

- Automatic execution and attachment of relevant CLI command output.
- Multiple message format options such as the following:
 - Short Text—Text that is suitable for pagers or printed reports.
 - Full Text—Fully formatted message information that is suitable for human reading.
 - XML—Matching readable format that uses the Extensible Markup Language (XML) and the Adaptive Messaging Language (AML) XML schema definition (XSD). The XML format enables communication with the Cisco TAC.
- Multiple concurrent message destinations. You can configure up to 50 e-mail destination addresses for each destination profile.

Smart Call Home Destination Profiles

A Smart Call Home destination profile includes the following information:

- One or more alert groups—The group of alerts that trigger a specific Smart Call Home message if the alert occurs.
- One or more e-mail destinations—The list of recipients for the Smart Call Home messages that are generated by alert groups assigned to this destination profile.
- Message format—The format for the Smart Call Home message (short text, full text, or XML).
- Message severity level—The Smart Call Home severity level that the alert must meet before the switch generates a Smart Call Home message to all e-mail addresses in the destination profile. The switch does not generate an alert if the Smart Call Home severity level of the alert is lower than the message severity level set for the destination profile.

You can also configure a destination profile to allow periodic inventory update messages by using the inventory alert group that will send out periodic messages daily, weekly, or monthly.

Cisco Nexus switches support the following predefined destination profiles:

- CiscoTAC-1—Supports the Cisco-TAC alert group in XML message format.
- full-text-destination—Supports the full text message format.

- short-text-destination—Supports the short text message format.

Smart Call Home Alert Groups

An alert group is a predefined subset of Smart Call Home alerts that are supported in all Cisco Nexus devices. Alert groups allow you to select the set of Smart Call Home alerts that you want to send to a predefined or custom destination profile. The switch sends Smart Call Home alerts to e-mail destinations in a destination profile only if that Smart Call Home alert belongs to one of the alert groups associated with that destination profile and if the alert has a Smart Call Home message severity at or above the message severity set in the destination profile.

The following table lists the supported alert groups and the default CLI command output included in Smart Call Home messages generated for the alert group.

Table 16: Alert Groups and Executed Commands

Alert Group	Description	Executed Commands
Cisco-TAC	All critical alerts from the other alert groups destined for Smart Call Home.	Execute commands based on the alert group that originates the alert.
Diagnostic	Events generated by diagnostics.	show diagnostic result module all detail show moduleshow version show tech-support platform callhome
Supervisor hardware	Events related to supervisor modules.	show diagnostic result module all detail show moduleshow version show tech-support platform callhome
Linecard hardware	Events related to standard or intelligent switching modules.	show diagnostic result module all detail show moduleshow version show tech-support platform callhome
Configuration	Periodic events related to configuration.	show version show module show running-config all show startup-config
System	Events generated by a failure of a software system that is critical to unit operation.	show system redundancy status show tech-support
Environmental	Events related to power, fan, and environment-sensing elements such as temperature alarms.	show environment show logging last 1000 show module show version show tech-support platform callhome

Alert Group	Description	Executed Commands
Inventory	Inventory status that is provided whenever a unit is cold booted, or when FRUs are inserted or removed. This alert is considered a noncritical event, and the information is used for status and entitlement.	show module show version show license usage show inventory show sprom all show system uptime

Smart Call Home maps the syslog severity level to the corresponding Smart Call Home severity level for syslog port group messages.

You can customize predefined alert groups to execute additional **show** commands when specific events occur and send that **show** output with the Smart Call Home message.

You can add **show** commands only to full text and XML destination profiles. Short text destination profiles do not support additional **show** commands because they only allow 128 bytes of text.

Smart Call Home Message Levels

Smart Call Home allows you to filter messages based on their level of urgency. You can associate each destination profile (predefined and user defined) with a Smart Call Home message level threshold. The switch does not generate any Smart Call Home messages with a value lower than this threshold for the destination profile. The Smart Call Home message level ranges from 0 (lowest level of urgency) to 9 (highest level of urgency), and the default is 0 (the switch sends all messages).

Smart Call Home messages that are sent for syslog alert groups have the syslog severity level mapped to the Smart Call Home message level.



Note Smart Call Home does not change the syslog message level in the message text.

The following table shows each Smart Call Home message level keyword and the corresponding syslog level for the syslog port alert group.

Table 17: Severity and Syslog Level Mapping

Smart Call Home Level	Keyword	Syslog Level	Description
9	Catastrophic	N/A	Network-wide catastrophic failure.
8	Disaster	N/A	Significant network impact.
7	Fatal	Emergency (0)	System is unusable.
6	Critical	Alert (1)	Critical conditions that indicate that immediate attention is needed.
5	Major	Critical (2)	Major conditions.

Smart Call Home Level	Keyword	Syslog Level	Description
4	Minor	Error (3)	Minor conditions.
3	Warning	Warning (4)	Warning conditions.
2	Notification	Notice (5)	Basic notification and informational messages.
1	Normal	Information (6)	Normal event signifying return to normal state.
0	Debugging	Debug (7)	Debugging messages.

Call Home Message Formats

Call Home supports the following message formats:

- Short text message format
- Common fields for all full text and XML messages
- Inserted fields for a reactive or proactive event message
- Inserted fields for an inventory event message
- Inserted fields for a user-generated test message

The following table describes the short text formatting option for all message types.

Table 18: Short Text Message Format

Data Item	Description
Device identification	Configured device name
Date/time stamp	Time stamp of the triggering event
Error isolation message	Plain English description of triggering event
Alarm urgency level	Error level such as that applied to a system message

The following table describes the common event message format for full text or XML.

Table 19: Common Fields for All Full Text and XML Messages

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Time stamp	Date and time stamp of event in ISO time notation: <i>YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS</i> <i>GMT+HH:MM</i>	/aml/header/time

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Message name	Name of message. Specific event names are listed in the preceding table.	/aml/header/name
Message type	Name of message type, such as reactive or proactive.	/aml/header/type
Message group	Name of alert group, such as syslog.	/aml/header/group
Severity level	Severity level of message.	/aml/header/level
Source ID	Product type for routing.	/aml/header/source
Device ID	<p>Unique device identifier (UDI) for the end device that generated the message. This field should be empty if the message is nonspecific to a device. The format is <i>type@Sid@serial</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i> is the product model number from backplane IDPROM. • <i>@</i> is a separator character. • <i>Sid</i> is C, identifying the serial ID as a chassis serial number. • <i>serial</i> is the number identified by the Sid field. <p>An example is WS-C6509@C@12345678</p>	/aml/ header/deviceID
Customer ID	Optional user-configurable field used for contract information or other ID by any support service.	/aml/ header/customerID
Contract ID	Optional user-configurable field used for contract information or other ID by any support service.	/aml/ header /contractID
Site ID	Optional user-configurable field used for Cisco-supplied site ID or other data meaningful to alternate support service.	/aml/ header/siteID

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Server ID	<p>If the message is generated from the device, this is the unique device identifier (UDI) of the device.</p> <p>The format is <i>type@Sid@serial</i>:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>type</i> is the product model number from backplane IDPROM. • <i>@</i> is a separator character. • <i>Sid</i> is C, identifying the serial ID as a chassis serial number. • <i>serial</i> is the number identified by the Sid field. <p>An example is WS-C6509@C@12345678</p>	/aml/header/serverID
Message description	Short text that describes the error.	/aml/body/msgDesc
Device name	Node that experienced the event (hostname of the device).	/aml/body/sysName
Contact name	Name of person to contact for issues associated with the node that experienced the event.	/aml/body/sysContact
Contact e-mail	E-mail address of person identified as the contact for this unit.	/aml/body/sysContactEmail
Contact phone number	Phone number of the person identified as the contact for this unit.	/aml/body/sysContactPhoneNumber
Street address	Optional field that contains the street address for RMA part shipments associated with this unit.	/aml/body/sysStreetAddress
Model name	Model name of the device (the specific model as part of a product family name).	/aml/body/chassis/name
Serial number	Chassis serial number of the unit.	/aml/body/chassis/serialNo
Chassis part number	Top assembly number of the chassis.	/aml/body/chassis/partNo
Fields specific to a particular alert group message are inserted here.		
The following fields may be repeated if multiple CLI commands are executed for this alert group.		

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Command output name	Exact name of the issued CLI command.	/aml/attachments/attachment/name
Attachment type	Specific command output.	/aml/attachments/attachment/type
MIME type	Either plain text or encoding type.	/aml/attachments/attachment/mime
Command output text	Output of command automatically executed.	/aml/attachments/attachment/atdata

The following table describes the reactive event message format for full text or XML.

Table 20: Inserted Fields for a Reactive or Proactive Event Message

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Chassis hardware version	Hardware version of chassis.	/aml/body/chassis/hwVersion
Supervisor module software version	Top-level software version.	/aml/body/chassis/swVersion
Affected FRU name	Name of the affected FRU that is generating the event message.	/aml/body/fru/name
Affected FRU serial number	Serial number of the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/serialNo
Affected FRU part number	Part number of the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/partNo
FRU slot	Slot number of the FRU that is generating the event message.	/aml/body/fru/slot
FRU hardware version	Hardware version of the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/hwVersion
FRU software version	Software version(s) that is running on the affected FRU.	/aml/body/fru/swVersion

The following table describes the inventory event message format for full text or XML.

Table 21: Inserted Fields for an Inventory Event Message

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Chassis hardware version	Hardware version of the chassis.	/aml/body/chassis/hwVersion
Supervisor module software version	Top-level software version.	/aml/body/chassis/swVersion
FRU name	Name of the affected FRU that is generating the event message.	/aml/body/fru/name
FRU s/n	Serial number of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/serialNo
FRU part number	Part number of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/partNo

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
FRU slot	Slot number of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/slot
FRU hardware version	Hardware version of the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/hwVersion
FRU software version	Software version(s) that is running on the FRU.	/aml/body/fru/swVersion

The following table describes the user-generated test message format for full text or XML.

Table 22: Inserted Fields for a User-Generated Test Message

Data Item (Plain Text and XML)	Description (Plain Text and XML)	XML Tag (XML Only)
Process ID	Unique process ID.	/aml/body/process/id
Process state	State of process (for example, running or halted).	/aml/body/process/processState
Process exception	Exception or reason code.	/aml/body/process/exception

Guidelines and Limitations for Smart Call Home

- If there is no IP connectivity, or if the interface in the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) instance to the profile destination is down, the switch cannot send Smart Call Home messages.
- Operates with any SMTP e-mail server.

Prerequisites for Smart Call Home

- You must have e-mail server connectivity.
- You must have access to contact name (SNMP server contact), phone, and street address information.
- You must have IP connectivity between the switch and the e-mail server.
- You must have an active service contract for the device that you are configuring.

Default Call Home Settings

Table 23: Default Call Home Parameters

Parameters	Default
Destination message size for a message sent in full text format	4000000
Destination message size for a message sent in XML format	4000000

Parameters	Default
Destination message size for a message sent in short text format	4000
SMTP server port number if no port is specified	25
Alert group association with profile	All for full-text-destination and short-text-destination profiles. The cisco-tac alert group for the CiscoTAC-1 destination profile.
Format type	XML
Call Home message level	0 (zero)

Configuring Smart Call Home

Registering for Smart Call Home

Before you begin

- Know the sMARTnet contract number for your switch
- Know your e-mail address
- Know your Cisco.com ID

Procedure

-
- Step 1** In a browser, navigate to the Smart Call Home web page:
<http://www.cisco.com/go/smartcall/>
- Step 2** Under **Getting Started**, follow the directions to register Smart Call Home.
-

What to do next

Configure contact information.

Configuring Contact Information

You must configure the e-mail, phone, and street address information for Smart Call Home. You can optionally configure the contract ID, customer ID, site ID, and switch priority information.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# snmp-server contact <i>sys-contact</i>	Configures the SNMP sysContact.
Step 3	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 4	switch(config-callhome)# email-contact <i>email-address</i>	<p>Configures the e-mail address for the primary person responsible for the switch.</p> <p>The <i>email-address</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters in an e-mail address format.</p> <p>Note You can use any valid e-mail address. The address cannot contain spaces.</p>
Step 5	switch(config-callhome)# phone-contact <i>international-phone-number</i>	<p>Configures the phone number in international phone number format for the primary person responsible for the device. The <i>international-phone-number</i> can be up to 17 alphanumeric characters and must be in international phone number format.</p> <p>Note The phone number cannot contain spaces. Use the plus (+) prefix before the number.</p>
Step 6	switch(config-callhome)# streetaddress <i>address</i>	<p>Configures the street address for the primary person responsible for the switch.</p> <p>The <i>address</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters. Spaces are accepted.</p>
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# contract-id <i>contract-number</i>	<p>Configures the contract number for this switch from the service agreement.</p> <p>The <i>contract-number</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters.</p>
Step 8	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# customer-id <i>customer-number</i>	<p>Configures the customer number for this switch from the service agreement.</p> <p>The <i>customer-number</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters.</p>
Step 9	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# site-id <i>site-number</i>	<p>Configures the site number for this switch.</p> <p>The <i>site-number</i> can be up to 255 alphanumeric characters in free format.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 10	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# switch-priority <i>number</i>	Configures the switch priority for this switch. The range is from 0 to 7, with 0 being the highest priority and 7 the lowest. The default is 7. Note Switch priority is used by the operations personnel or TAC support personnel to decide which Call Home message should be responded to first. You can prioritize Call Home alerts of the same severity from each switch.
Step 11	(Optional) switch# show callhome	Displays a summary of the Smart Call Home configuration.
Step 12	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure the contact information for Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server contact personname@companyname.com
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# email-contact personname@companyname.com
switch(config-callhome)# phone-contact +1-800-123-4567
switch(config-callhome)# street-address 123 Anystreet St., Anycity, Anywhere
```

What to do next

Create a destination profile.

Creating a Destination Profile

You must create a user-defined destination profile and configure the message format for that new destination profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile { ciscoTAC-1 { alert-group <i>group</i> email-addr	Creates a new destination profile and sets the message format for the profile. The

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>address</code> <code>http URL</code> <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code> <code>http</code> } <code>profilename</code> { <code>alert-group group</code> <code>email-addr address</code> <code>format</code> { <code>XML</code> <code>full-txt</code> <code>short-txt</code> } <code>http URL</code> <code>message-level level</code> <code>message-size size</code> <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code> <code>http</code> } <code>full-txt-destination</code> { <code>alert-group group</code> <code>email-addr address</code> <code>http URL</code> <code>message-level level</code> <code>message-size size</code> <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code> <code>http</code> }} <code>short-txt-destination</code> { <code>alert-group group</code> <code>email-addr address</code> <code>http URL</code> <code>message-level level</code> <code>message-size size</code> <code>transport-method</code> { <code>email</code> <code>http</code> }}	profile-name can be any alphanumeric string up to 31 characters. For further details about this command, see the command reference for your platform.
Step 4	(Optional) <code>switch# show callhome destination-profile [profile name]</code>	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
Step 5	(Optional) <code>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to create a destination profile for Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile Noc101 format full-text
```

Modifying a Destination Profile

You can modify the following attributes for a predefined or user-defined destination profile:

- Destination address—The actual address, pertinent to the transport mechanism, to which the alert should be sent.
- Message formatting—The message format used for sending the alert (full text, short text, or XML).
- Message level—The Call Home message severity level for this destination profile.
- Message size—The allowed length of a Call Home message sent to the e-mail addresses in this destination profile.



Note You cannot modify or delete the CiscoTAC-1 destination profile.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile { <i>name</i> full-txt-destination short-txt-destination } email-addr <i>address</i>	Configures an e-mail address for a user-defined or predefined destination profile. You can configure up to 50 e-mail addresses in a destination profile.
Step 4	destination-profile { <i>name</i> full-txt-destination short-txt-destination } message-level <i>number</i>	Configures the Smart Call Home message severity level for this destination profile. The switch sends only alerts that have a matching or higher Smart Call Home severity level to destinations in this profile. The range for the <i>number</i> is from 0 to 9, where 9 is the highest severity level.
Step 5	switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile { <i>name</i> full-txt-destination short-txt-destination } message-size <i>number</i>	Configures the maximum message size for this destination profile. The range is from 0 to 5000000 for full-txt-destination and the default is 2500000. The range is from 0 to 100000 for short-txt-destination and the default is 4000. The value is 5000000 for CiscoTAC-1, which is not changeable.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# show callhome destination-profile [<i>profile name</i>]	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to modify a destination profile for Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile full-text-destination email-addr
person@example.com
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile full-text-destination message-level 5
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile full-text-destination message-size 10000
switch(config-callhome)#
```

What to do next

Associate an alert group with a destination profile.

Associating an Alert Group with a Destination Profile

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile name alert-group {All Cisco-TAC Configuration Diagnostic Environmental Inventory License Linecard-Hardware Supervisor-Hardware Syslog-group-port System Test}	Associates an alert group with this destination profile. Use the All keyword to associate all alert groups with the destination profile.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show callhome destination-profile [profile name]	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to associate all alert groups with the destination profile Noc101:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# destination-profile Noc101 alert-group All
switch(config-callhome)#
```

What to do next

Optionally, you can add **show** commands to an alert group and configure the SMTP e-mail server.

Adding Show Commands to an Alert Group

You can assign a maximum of five user-defined **show** commands to an alert group.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome)# alert-group {Configuration Diagnostic Environmental Inventory License Linecard-Hardware 	Adds the show command output to any Call Home messages sent for this alert group. Only valid show commands are accepted.
	Syslog-group-port System Test}	

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Supervisor-Hardware Syslog-group-port System Test} user-def-cmd <i>show-cmd</i>	Note You cannot add user-defined show commands to the CiscoTAC-1 destination profile.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show callhome user-def-cmds	Displays information about all user-defined show commands added to alert groups.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to add the **show ip routing** command to the Cisco-TAC alert group:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# alert-group Configuration user-def-cmd show ip routing
switch(config-callhome)#
```

What to do next

Configure Smart Call Home to connect to the SMTP e-mail server.

Configuring E-Mail Server Details

You must configure the SMTP server address for the Smart Call Home functionality to work. You can also configure the from and reply-to e-mail addresses.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome)# transport email smtp-server <i>ip-address</i> [port number] [use-vrf <i>vrf-name</i>]	Configures the SMTP server as either the domain name server (DNS) name, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address. The <i>number</i> range is from 1 to 65535. The default port number is 25. Optionally, you can configure the VRF instance to use when communicating with this SMTP server.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# transport email from <i>email-address</i>	Configures the e-mail from field for Smart Call Home messages.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config-callhome)# transport email reply-to <i>email-address</i>	Configures the e-mail reply-to field for Smart Call Home messages.
Step 6	(Optional) switch# show callhome transport-email	Displays information about the e-mail configuration for Smart Call Home.
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure the e-mail options for Smart Call Home messages:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# transport email smtp-server 192.0.2.10 use-vrf Red
switch(config-callhome)# transport email from person@example.com
switch(config-callhome)# transport email reply-to person@example.com
switch(config-callhome)#
```

What to do next

Configure periodic inventory notifications.

Configuring Periodic Inventory Notifications

You can configure the switch to periodically send a message with an inventory of all software services currently enabled and running on the device with hardware inventory information. The switch generates two Smart Call Home notifications; periodic configuration messages and periodic inventory messages.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome)# periodic-inventory notification [<i>interval days</i>] [<i>timeofday time</i>]	Configures periodic inventory messages. The <i>interval days</i> range is from 1 to 30 days. The default is 7 days. The <i>timeofday time</i> is in HH:MM format.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show callhome	Displays information about Smart Call Home.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure the periodic inventory messages to generate every 20 days:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# periodic-inventory notification interval 20
switch(config-callhome)#
```

What to do next

Disable duplicate message throttling.

Disabling Duplicate Message Throttling

You can limit the number of duplicate messages received for the same event. By default, the switch limits the number of duplicate messages received for the same event. If the number of duplicate messages sent exceeds 30 messages within a 2-hour time frame, the switch discards further messages for that alert type.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome) # no duplicate-message throttle	Disables duplicate message throttling for Smart Call Home. Duplicate message throttling is enabled by default.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to disable duplicate message throttling:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# no duplicate-message throttle
switch(config-callhome)#
```

What to do next

Enable Smart Call Home.

Enabling or Disabling Smart Call Home

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome) # [no] enable	Enables or disables Smart Call Home. Smart Call Home is disabled by default.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to enable Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome) # enable
switch(config-callhome) #
```

What to do next

Optionally, generate a test message.

Testing the Smart Call Home Configuration

Before you begin

Verify that the message level for the destination profile is set to 2 or lower.



Important

Smart Call Home testing fails when the message level for the destination profile is set to 3 or higher.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# callhome	Enters Smart Call Home configuration mode.
Step 3	switch(config-callhome) # callhome send diagnostic	Sends the specified Smart Call Home message to all configured destinations.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	switch(config-callhome) # callhome test	Sends a test message to all configured destinations.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to enable Smart Call Home:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# callhome
switch(config-callhome)# callhome send diagnostic
switch(config-callhome)# callhome test
switch(config-callhome)#
```

Verifying the Smart Call Home Configuration

Use one of the following commands to verify the configuration:

Command	Purpose
show callhome	Displays the status for Smart Call Home.
show callhome destination-profile <i>name</i>	Displays one or more Smart Call Home destination profiles.
show callhome pending-diff	Displays the differences between the pending and running Smart Call Home configuration.
show callhome status	Displays the Smart Call Home status.
show callhome transport-email	Displays the e-mail configuration for Smart Call Home.
show callhome user-def-cmds	Displays CLI commands added to any alert groups.
show running-config [callhome callhome-all]	Displays the running configuration for Smart Call Home.
show startup-config callhome	Displays the startup configuration for Smart Call Home.
show tech-support callhome	Displays the technical support output for Smart Call Home.

Sample Syslog Alert Notification in Full-Text Format

This sample shows the full-text format for a syslog port alert-group notification:

```
source:MDS9000
Switch Priority:7
```

```

Device Id:WS-C6509@C@FG@07120011
Customer Id:Example.com
Contract Id:123
Site Id:San Jose
Server Id:WS-C6509@C@FG@07120011
Time of Event:2004-10-08T11:10:44
Message Name:SYSLOG_ALERT
Message Type:Syslog
Severity Level:2
System Name:10.76.100.177
Contact Name:User Name
Contact Email:person@example.com
Contact Phone:+1-408-555-1212
Street Address:#1234 Any Street, Any City, Any State, 12345
Event Description:2006 Oct 8 11:10:44 10.76.100.177 %PORT-5-IF_TRUNK_UP:
%$VLAN 1%$ Interface e2/5, vlan 1 is up
syslog_facility:PORT
start chassis information:
Affected Chassis:WS-C6509
Affected Chassis Serial Number:FG@07120011
Affected Chassis Hardware Version:0.104
Affected Chassis Software Version:3.1(1)
Affected Chassis Part No:73-8607-01
end chassis information:

```

Sample Syslog Alert Notification in XML Format

This sample shows the XML format for a syslog port alert-group notification:

```

From: example
Sent: Wednesday, April 25, 2007 7:20 AM
To: User (user)
Subject: System Notification From Router - syslog - 2007-04-25 14:19:55
GMT+00:00
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<soap-env:Envelope xmlns:soap-env="http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope">
<soap-env:Header>
<aml-session:Session xmlns:aml-session="http://www.example.com/2004/01/aml-session"
soap-env:mustUnderstand="true" soap-env:role=
"http://www.w3.org/2003/05/soap-envelope/role/next">
<aml-session:To>http://tools.example.com/services/DDCEService</aml-session:To>
<aml-session:Path>
<aml-session:Via>http://www.example.com/appliance/uri</aml-session:Via>
</aml-session:Path>
<aml-session:From>http://www.example.com/appliance/uri</aml-session:From>
<aml-session:MessageId>M2:69000101:C9D9E20B</aml-session:MessageId>
</aml-session:Session>
</soap-env:Header>
<soap-env:Body>
<aml-block:Block xmlns:aml-block="http://www.example.com/2004/01/aml-block">
<aml-block:Header>
<aml-block:Type>http://www.example.com/2005/05/callhome/syslog</aml-block:Type>
<aml-block:CreationDate>2007-04-25 14:19:55 GMT+00:00</aml-block:CreationDate>
<aml-block:Builder>
<aml-block:Name>Cat6500</aml-block:Name>
<aml-block:Version>2.0</aml-block:Version>
</aml-block:Builder>
<aml-block:BlockGroup>
<aml-block:GroupId>G3:69000101:C9F9E20C</aml-block:GroupId>
<aml-block:Number>0</aml-block:Number>
<aml-block:IsLast>true</aml-block:IsLast>
<aml-block:IsPrimary>true</aml-block:IsPrimary>

```

```

<aml-block:WaitForPrimary>>false</aml-block:WaitForPrimary>
</aml-block:BlockGroup>
<aml-block:Severity>2</aml-block:Severity>
</aml-block:Header>
<aml-block:Content>
<ch:Call Home xmlns:ch="http://www.example.com/2005/05/callhome" version="1.0">
<ch:EventTime>2007-04-25 14:19:55 GMT+00:00</ch:EventTime>
<ch:MessageDescription>03:29:29: %CLEAR-5-COUNTERS: Clear counter on all
interfaces by console</ch:MessageDescription>
<ch:Event>
<ch>Type>syslog</ch>Type>
<ch:SubType>
</ch:SubType>
<ch:Brand>Cisco Systems</ch:Brand>
<ch:Series>Catalyst 6500 Series Switches</ch:Series>
</ch:Event>
<ch:CustomerData>
<ch:UserData>
<ch:Email>person@example.com</ch:Email>
</ch:UserData>
<ch:ContractData>
<ch:CustomerId>12345</ch:CustomerId>
<ch:SiteId>building 1</ch:SiteId>
<ch:ContractId>abcdefg12345</ch:ContractId>
<ch:DeviceId>WS-C6509@C@69000101</ch:DeviceId>
</ch:ContractData>
<ch:SystemInfo>
<ch>Name>Router</ch>Name>
<ch>Contact>
</ch>Contact>
<ch>ContactEmail>user@example.com</ch>ContactEmail>
<ch>ContactPhoneNumber>+1-408-555-1212</ch>ContactPhoneNumber>
<ch:StreetAddress>#1234 Any Street, Any City, Any State, 12345
</ch:StreetAddress>
</ch:SystemInfo>
</ch:CustomerData>
<ch:Device>
<rme:Chassis xmlns:rme="http://www.example.com/rme/4.0">
<rme:Model>WS-C6509</rme:Model>
<rme:HardwareVersion>1.0</rme:HardwareVersion>
<rme:SerialNumber>69000101</rme:SerialNumber>
<rme:AdditionalInformation>
<rme:AD name="PartNumber" value="73-3438-03 01" />
<rme:AD name="SoftwareVersion" value="4.0(20080421:012711)" />
</rme:AdditionalInformation>
</rme:Chassis>
</ch:Device>
</ch:Call Home>
</aml-block:Content>
<aml-block:Attachments>
<aml-block:Attachment type="inline">
<aml-block:Name>show logging</aml-block:Name>
<aml-block:Data encoding="plain">
<![CDATA[Syslog logging: enabled (0 messages dropped, 0 messages
rate-limited, 0 flushes, 0 overruns, xml disabled, filtering disabled)
  Console logging: level debugging, 53 messages logged, xml disabled,
filtering disabled  Monitor logging: level debugging, 0 messages logged,
xml disabled,filtering disabled  Buffer logging: level debugging,
53 messages logged, xml disabled,  filtering disabled  Exception
Logging: size (4096 bytes)  Count and timestamp logging messages: disabled
  Trap logging: level informational, 72 message lines logged
Log Buffer (8192 bytes):
00:00:54: curr is 0x20000
00:00:54: RP: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
]]>

```

```

00:01:05: %SYS-5-CONFIG_I: Configured from memory by console
00:01:09: %SYS-5-RESTART: System restarted --Cisco IOS Software,
s72033_rp Software (s72033_rp-ADVENTERPRISEK9_DBG-VM), Experimental
Version 12.2(20070421:012711) Copyright (c) 1986-2007 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-07 15:54 by xxx
Firmware compiled 11-Apr-07 03:34 by integ Build [100]00:01:01: %PFREDUN-6-ACTIVE:
  Initializing as ACTIVE processor for this switch00:01:01: %SYS-3-LOGGER_FLUSHED:
System was paused for 00:00:00 to ensure console debugging output.00:03:00: SP: SP:
  Currently running ROMMON from F1 region00:03:07: %C6K_PLATFORM-SP-4-CONFREG_BREAK
_ENABLED: The default factory setting for config register is 0x2102.It is advisable
  to retain 1 in 0x2102 as it prevents returning to ROMMON when break is issued.00:03:18:
%SYS-SP-5-RESTART: System restarted --Cisco IOS Software, s72033_sp Software
(s72033_sp-ADVENTERPRISEK9_DBG-VM), Experimental Version 12.2(20070421:012711)Copyright
(c) 1986-2007 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-07 18:00 by xxx
00:03:18: %SYS-SP-6-BOOTTIME: Time taken to reboot after reload = 339 seconds
00:03:18: %OIR-SP-6-INSPTS: Power supply inserted in slot 1
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSOK: power supply 1 turned on.
00:03:18: %OIR-SP-6-INSPTS: Power supply inserted in slot00:01:09: %SSH-5-ENABLED:
  SSH 1.99 has been enabled
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSOK: power supply 2 turned on.
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSREDUNDANTMISMATCH: power supplies rated outputs do not match.
00:03:18: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSREDUNDANTBOTHSUPPLY: in power-redundancy mode, system is
  operating on both power supplies.
00:01:10: %CRYPTO-6-ISAKMP_ON_OFF: ISAKMP is OFF
00:01:10: %CRYPTO-6-ISAKMP_ON_OFF: ISAKMP is OFF
00:03:20: %C6KENV-SP-4-FANHIOOUTPUT: Version 2 high-output fan-tray is in effect
00:03:22: %C6KPWR-SP-4-PSNOREDUNDANCY: Power supplies are not in full redundancy,
  power usage exceeds lower capacity supply
00:03:26: %FABRIC-SP-5-FABRIC_MODULE_ACTIVE: The Switch Fabric Module in slot 6
  became active.
00:03:28: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 6: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:03:50: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 6: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:03:50: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 6, interfaces are now online
00:03:51: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 3: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:03:51: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 7: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:03:51: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 9: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:01:51: %MFIB_CONST_RP-6-REPLICATION_MODE_CHANGE: Replication Mode Change Detected.
  Current system replication mode is Ingress
00:04:01: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 3: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:04:01: %OIR-SP-6-DOWNGRADE: Fabric capable module 3 not at an appropriate hardware
  revision level, and can only run in flowthrough mode
00:04:02: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 3, interfaces are now online
00:04:11: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 7: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:04:14: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 7, interfaces are now online
00:04:35: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 9: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:04:37: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 9, interfaces are now online
00:00:09: DaughterBoard (Distributed Forwarding Card 3)
Firmware compiled 11-Apr-07 03:34 by integ Build [100]
00:00:22: %SYS-DFC4-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco DCOS Software, c6lc2 Software (c6lc2-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 4.0
(20080421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2008 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 17:20 by xxx
00:00:23: DFC4: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
00:00:25: %SYS-DFC2-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco IOS Software, c6slc Software (c6slc-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 12.2
(20070421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2007 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 16:40 by username1
00:00:26: DFC2: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
00:04:56: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 4: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:00:09: DaughterBoard (Distributed Forwarding Card 3)
Firmware compiled 11-Apr-08 03:34 by integ Build [100]
slot_id is 8
00:00:31: %FLASHFS_HES-DFC8-3-BADCARD: /bootflash:: The flash card seems to

```

```

be corrupted
00:00:31: %SYS-DFC8-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco DCOS Software, c6lc2 Software (c6lc2-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 4.0
(20080421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2008 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 17:20 by username1
00:00:31: DFC8: Currently running ROMMON from S (Gold) region
00:04:59: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 2: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:05:12: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 8: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:05:13: %DIAG-SP-6-RUN_MINIMUM: Module 1: Running Minimal Diagnostics...
00:00:24: %SYS-DFC1-5-RESTART: System restarted --
Cisco DCOS Software, c6slc Software (c6slc-SPDBG-VM), Experimental Version 4.0
(20080421:012711)Copyright (c) 1986-2008 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Thu 26-Apr-08 16:40 by username1
00:00:25: DFC1: Currently running ROMMON from F2 region
00:05:30: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 4: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:05:31: %SPAN-SP-6-SPAN_EGRESS_REPLICATION_MODE_CHANGE: Span Egress HW
Replication Mode Change Detected. Current replication mode for unused asic
session 0 is Centralized
00:05:31: %SPAN-SP-6-SPAN_EGRESS_REPLICATION_MODE_CHANGE: Span Egress HW
Replication Mode Change Detected. Current replication mode for unused asic
session 1 is Centralized
00:05:31: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 4, interfaces are now online
00:06:02: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 1: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:06:03: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 1, interfaces are now online
00:06:31: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 2: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:06:33: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 2, interfaces are now online
00:04:30: %XDR-6-XDRIPCNOTIFY: Message not sent to slot 4/0 (4) because of IPC
error timeout. Disabling linecard. (Expected during linecard OIR)
00:06:59: %DIAG-SP-6-DIAG_OK: Module 8: Passed Online Diagnostics
00:06:59: %OIR-SP-6-DOWNGRADE_EARL: Module 8 DFC installed is not identical to
system PFC and will perform at current system operating mode.
00:07:06: %OIR-SP-6-INSCARD: Card inserted in slot 8, interfaces are now online
Router#]]>
</aml-block:Data>
</aml-block:Attachment>
</aml-block:Attachments>
</aml-block:Block>
</soap-env:Body>
</soap-env:Envelope>

```



CHAPTER 12

Configuring Rollback

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About Rollbacks, on page 143](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations, on page 143](#)
- [Creating a Checkpoint, on page 144](#)
- [Implementing a Rollback, on page 145](#)
- [Verifying the Rollback Configuration, on page 145](#)

Information About Rollbacks

The rollback feature allows you to take a snapshot, or user checkpoint, of the Cisco NX-OS configuration and then reapply that configuration to your switch at any point without having to reload the switch. A rollback allows any authorized administrator to apply this checkpoint configuration without requiring expert knowledge of the features configured in the checkpoint.

You can create a checkpoint copy of the current running configuration at any time. Cisco NX-OS saves this checkpoint as an ASCII file which you can use to roll back the running configuration to the checkpoint configuration at a future time. You can create multiple checkpoints to save different versions of your running configuration.

When you roll back the running configuration, you can trigger an atomic rollback. An atomic rollback implements a rollback only if no errors occur.

Guidelines and Limitations

Rollback has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You can create up to ten checkpoint copies.
- You cannot apply the checkpoint file of one switch into another switch.
- Your checkpoint file names must be 75 characters or less.
- You cannot start a checkpoint filename with the word system.
- Beginning in Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1), you can start a checkpoint filename with the word auto.

- Beginning in Cisco NX-OS Release 5.0(2)N1(1), you can name a checkpoint file summary or any abbreviation of the word summary.
- When FCoE is enabled, the checkpoint and configuration rollback functionality are disabled.
- Only one user can perform a checkpoint, rollback, or copy the running configuration to the startup configuration at the same time.
- After you enter the **write erase** and **reload** command, checkpoints are deleted. You can use the clear checkpoint database command to clear out all checkpoint files.
- When checkpoints are created on bootflash, differences with the running-system configuration cannot be performed before performing the rollback, and the system reports “No Changes.”
- Checkpoints are local to a switch.
- Checkpoints that are created using the **checkpoint** and **checkpoint *checkpoint_name*** commands are present upon a switchover for all switches.
- A rollback to files on bootflash is supported only on files that are created using the **checkpoint *checkpoint_name*** command and not on any other type of ASCII file.
- Checkpoint names must be unique. You cannot overwrite previously saved checkpoints with the same name.
- Checkpoints are not supported post upgrade or downgrade.
- The Cisco NX-OS commands may differ from the Cisco IOS commands.

Creating a Checkpoint

You can create up to ten checkpoints of your configuration per switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<pre>switch# checkpoint { [<i>cp-name</i>] [description <i>descr</i>] [file <i>file-name</i>]</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch# checkpoint stable</pre>	<p>Creates a checkpoint of the running configuration to either a user checkpoint name or a file. The checkpoint name can be any alphanumeric string up to 80 characters but cannot contain spaces. If you do not provide a name, Cisco NX-OS sets the checkpoint name to user-checkpoint-<number> where number is from 1 to 10.</p> <p>The description can contain up to 80 alphanumeric characters, including spaces.</p>
Step 2	<p>(Optional) <pre>switch# no checkpoint<i>cp-name</i></pre></p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch# no checkpoint stable</pre>	<p>You can use the no form of the checkpoint command to remove a checkpoint name.</p> <p>Use the delete command to remove a checkpoint file.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	(Optional) <code>switch# show checkpoint <i>cp-name</i></code> Example: <code>[all]</code> <code>switch# show checkpoint stable</code>	Displays the contents of the checkpoint name.

Implementing a Rollback

You can implement a rollback to a checkpoint name or file. Before you implement a rollback, you can view the differences between source and destination checkpoints that reference current or saved configurations.



Note If you make a configuration change during an atomic rollback, the rollback will fail.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<code>show diff rollback-patch {checkpoint <i>src-cp-name</i> running-config startup-config file <i>source-file</i>} {checkpoint <i>dest-cp-name</i> running-config startup-config file <i>dest-file</i>}</code> Example: <code>switch# show diff rollback-patch checkpoint stable running-config</code>	Displays the differences between the source and destination checkpoint selections.
Step 2	<code>rollback running-config {checkpoint <i>cp-name</i> file <i>cp-file</i>} atomic</code> Example: <code>switch# rollback running-config checkpoint stable</code>	Creates an atomic rollback to the specified checkpoint name or file if no errors occur.

Example

The following example shows how to create a checkpoint file and then implement an atomic rollback to a user checkpoint name:

```
switch# checkpoint stable
switch# rollback running-config checkpoint stable atomic
```

Verifying the Rollback Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the rollback configuration:

Command	Purpose
show checkpoint <i>name</i> [all]	Displays the contents of the checkpoint name.
show checkpoint all [user system]	Displays the contents of all checkpoints in the current switch. You can limit the displayed checkpoints to user or system-generated checkpoints.
show checkpoint summary [user system]	Displays a list of all checkpoints in the current switch. You can limit the displayed checkpoints to user or system-generated checkpoints.
show diff rollback-patch { checkpoint <i>src-cp-name</i> running-config startup-config file <i>source-file</i> } { checkpoint <i>dest-cp-name</i> running-config startup-config file <i>dest-file</i> }	Displays the differences between the source and destination checkpoint selections.
show rollback log [exec verify]	Displays the contents of the rollback log.



Note Use the **clear checkpoint database** command to delete all checkpoint files.



CHAPTER 13

Configuring DNS

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About DNS Client](#) , on page 147
- [Prerequisites for DNS Clients](#), on page 148
- [Licensing Requirements for DNS Clients](#), on page 148
- [Default Settings for DNS Clients](#), on page 148
- [Configuring DNS Clients](#), on page 148

Information About DNS Client

If your network devices require connectivity with devices in networks for which you do not control name assignment, you can assign device names that uniquely identify your devices within the entire internetwork using the domain name server (DNS). DNS uses a hierarchical scheme for establishing hostnames for network nodes, which allows local control of the segments of the network through a client-server scheme. The DNS system can locate a network device by translating the hostname of the device into its associated IP address.

On the Internet, a domain is a portion of the naming hierarchy tree that refers to general groupings of networks based on the organization type or geography. Domain names are pieced together with periods (.) as the delimiting characters. For example, Cisco is a commercial organization that the Internet identifies by a com domain, so its domain name is cisco.com. A specific hostname in this domain, the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) system, for example, is identified as ftp.cisco.com.

Name Servers

Name servers keep track of domain names and know the parts of the domain tree for which they have complete information. A name server may also store information about other parts of the domain tree. To map domain names to IP addresses in Cisco NX-OS, you must first identify the hostnames, then specify a name server, and enable the DNS service.

Cisco NX-OS allows you to statically map IP addresses to domain names. You can also configure Cisco NX-OS to use one or more domain name servers to find an IP address for a hostname.

DNS Operation

A name server handles client-issued queries to the DNS server for locally defined hosts within a particular zone as follows:

- An authoritative name server responds to DNS user queries for a domain name that is under its zone of authority by using the permanent and cached entries in its own host table. If the query is for a domain name that is under its zone of authority but for which it does not have any configuration information, the authoritative name server replies that no such information exists.
- A name server that is not configured as the authoritative name server responds to DNS user queries by using information that it has cached from previously received query responses. If no router is configured as the authoritative name server for a zone, queries to the DNS server for locally defined hosts receive nonauthoritative responses.

Name servers answer DNS queries (forward incoming DNS queries or resolve internally generated DNS queries) according to the forwarding and lookup parameters configured for the specific domain.

High Availability

Cisco NX-OS supports stateless restarts for the DNS client. After a reboot or supervisor switchover, Cisco NX-OS applies the running configuration.

Prerequisites for DNS Clients

The DNS client has the following prerequisites:

- You must have a DNS name server on your network.

Licensing Requirements for DNS Clients

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	Licence Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	DNS requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the <i>Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide</i> .

Default Settings for DNS Clients

The following table shows the default settings for DNS client parameters.

Parameter	Default
DNS client	Enabled

Configuring DNS Clients

You can configure the DNS client to use a DNS server on your network.

Before you begin

- Ensure that you have a domain name server on your network.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configuration terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# vrf context managment	Specifies a configurable virtual and routing (VRF) name.
Step 3	switch(config)# ip host name address1 [address2... address6]	Defines up to six static hostname-to-address mappings in the host name cache.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# ip domain name name [use-vrf vrf-name]	Defines the default domain name server that Cisco NX-OS uses to complete unqualified hostnames. You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to resolve this domain name server if it cannot be resolved in the VRF that you configured this domain name under. Cisco NX-OS appends the default domain name to any host name that does not contain a complete domain name before starting a domain-name lookup.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# ip domain-list name [use-vrf vrf-name]	Defines additional domain name servers that Cisco NX-OS can use to complete unqualified hostnames. You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to resolve this domain name server if it cannot be resolved in the VRF that you configured this domain name under. Cisco NX-OS uses each entry in the domain list to append that domain name to any hostname that does not contain a complete domain name before starting a domain-name lookup. Cisco NX-OS continues this for each entry in the domain list until it finds a match.
Step 6	(Optional) switch(config)# ip name-server server-address1 [server-address2... server-address6] [use-vrf vrf-name]	Defines up to six name servers. The address can be either an IPv4 address or an IPv6 address. You can optionally define a VRF that Cisco NX-OS uses to reach this name server if it cannot be reached in the VRF that you configured this name server under.
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config)# ip domain-lookup	Enables DNS-based address translation. This feature is enabled by default.
Step 8	(Optional) switch(config)# show hosts	Displays information about DNS.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 9	switch(config)# exit	Exits configuration mode and returns to EXEC mode.
Step 10	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a default domain name and enable DNS lookup:

```
switch# config t
switch(config)# vrf context management
switch(config)# ip domain-name mycompany.com
switch(config)# ip name-server 172.68.0.10
switch(config)# ip domain-lookup
```



CHAPTER 14

Configuring SNMP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About SNMP](#), on page 151
- [Licensing Requirements for SNMP](#), on page 155
- [Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP](#), on page 155
- [Default SNMP Settings](#), on page 155
- [Configuring SNMP](#), on page 156
- [Disabling SNMP](#), on page 168
- [Verifying the SNMP Configuration](#), on page 168
- [Feature History for SNMP](#), on page 168

Information About SNMP

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format for communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standardized framework and a common language used for the monitoring and management of devices in a network.

SNMP Functional Overview

The SNMP framework consists of three parts:

- An SNMP manager—The system used to control and monitor the activities of network devices using SNMP.
- An SNMP agent—The software component within the managed device that maintains the data for the device and reports these data, as needed, to managing systems. The Cisco Nexus device supports the agent and MIB. To enable the SNMP agent, you must define the relationship between the manager and the agent.
- A managed information base (MIB)—The collection of managed objects on the SNMP agent



Note Cisco NX-OS does not support SNMP sets for Ethernet MIBs.

The Cisco Nexus device supports SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. Both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c use a community-based form of security.

Cisco NX-OS supports SNMP over IPv6.

SNMP is defined in RFC 3410 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3410>), RFC 3411 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3411>), RFC 3412 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3412>), RFC 3413 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3413>), RFC 3414 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3414>), RFC 3415 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3415>), RFC 3416 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3416>), RFC 3417 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3417>), RFC 3418 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3418>), and RFC 3584 (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3584>).

SNMP Notifications

A key feature of SNMP is the ability to generate notifications from an SNMP agent. These notifications do not require that requests be sent from the SNMP manager. Notifications can indicate improper user authentication, restarts, the closing of a connection, loss of connection to a neighbor router, or other significant events.

Cisco NX-OS generates SNMP notifications as either traps or informs. A trap is an asynchronous, unacknowledged message sent from the agent to the SNMP managers listed in the host receiver table. Informs are asynchronous messages sent from the SNMP agent to the SNMP manager which the manager must acknowledge receipt of.

Traps are less reliable than informs because the SNMP manager does not send any acknowledgment when it receives a trap. The switch cannot determine if the trap was received. An SNMP manager that receives an inform request acknowledges the message with an SNMP response protocol data unit (PDU). If the Cisco Nexus device never receives a response, it can send the inform request again.

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to send notifications to multiple host receivers.

SNMPv3

SNMPv3 provides secure access to devices by a combination of authenticating and encrypting frames over the network. The security features provided in SNMPv3 are the following:

- Message integrity—Ensures that a packet has not been tampered with in-transit.
- Authentication—Determines the message is from a valid source.
- Encryption—Scrambles the packet contents to prevent it from being seen by unauthorized sources.

SNMPv3 provides for both security models and security levels. A security model is an authentication strategy that is set up for a user and the role in which the user resides. A security level is the permitted level of security within a security model. A combination of a security model and a security level determines which security mechanism is employed when handling an SNMP packet.

Security Models and Levels for SNMPv1, v2, and v3

The security level determines if an SNMP message needs to be protected from disclosure and if the message needs to be authenticated. The various security levels that exist within a security model are as follows:

- noAuthNoPriv—Security level that does not provide authentication or encryption. This level is not supported for SNMPv3.
- authNoPriv—Security level that provides authentication but does not provide encryption.

- authPriv—Security level that provides both authentication and encryption.

Three security models are available: SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3. The security model combined with the security level determine the security mechanism applied when the SNMP message is processed.

Table 24: SNMP Security Models and Levels

Model	Level	Authentication	Encryption	What Happens
v1	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
v2c	noAuthNoPriv	Community string	No	Uses a community string match for authentication.
v3	authNoPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	No	Provides authentication based on the Hash-Based Message Authentication Code (HMAC) Message Digest 5 (MD5) algorithm or the HMAC Secure Hash Algorithm (SHA).
v3	authPriv	HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA	DES	Provides authentication based on the HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA algorithms. Provides Data Encryption Standard (DES) 56-bit encryption in addition to authentication based on the Cipher Block Chaining (CBC) DES (DES-56) standard.

User-Based Security Model

SNMPv3 User-Based Security Model (USM) refers to SNMP message-level security and offers the following services:

- Message integrity—Ensures that messages have not been altered or destroyed in an unauthorized manner and that data sequences have not been altered to an extent greater than can occur nonmaliciously.
- Message origin authentication—Confirms that the claimed identity of the user who received the data was originated.

- Message confidentiality—Ensures that information is not made available or disclosed to unauthorized individuals, entities, or processes.

SNMPv3 authorizes management operations only by configured users and encrypts SNMP messages.

Cisco NX-OS uses two authentication protocols for SNMPv3:

- HMAC-MD5-96 authentication protocol
- HMAC-SHA-96 authentication protocol

Cisco NX-OS uses Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) as one of the privacy protocols for SNMPv3 message encryption and conforms with RFC 3826.

The **priv** option offers a choice of DES or 128-bit AES encryption for SNMP security encryption. The **priv** option and the **aes-128** token indicates that this privacy password is for generating a 128-bit AES key. The AES **priv** password can have a minimum of eight characters. If the passphrases are specified in clear text, you can specify a maximum of 64 characters. If you use the localized key, you can specify a maximum of 130 characters.



Note For an SNMPv3 operation using the external AAA server, you must use AES for the privacy protocol in user configuration on the external AAA server.

CLI and SNMP User Synchronization

SNMPv3 user management can be centralized at the Access Authentication and Accounting (AAA) server level. This centralized user management allows the SNMP agent in Cisco NX-OS to leverage the user authentication service of the AAA server. Once user authentication is verified, the SNMP PDUs are processed further. Additionally, the AAA server is also used to store user group names. SNMP uses the group names to apply the access/role policy that is locally available in the switch.

Any configuration changes made to the user group, role, or password results in database synchronization for both SNMP and AAA.

Cisco NX-OS synchronizes user configuration in the following ways:

- The **auth** passphrase specified in the **snmp-server user** command becomes the password for the CLI user.
- The password specified in the **username** command becomes the **auth** and **priv** passphrases for the SNMP user.
- If you create or delete a user using either SNMP or the CLI, the user is created or deleted for both SNMP and the CLI.
- User-role mapping changes are synchronized in SNMP and the CLI.
- Role changes (deletions or modifications from the CLI) are synchronized to SNMP.



Note When you configure passphrase/password in localized key/encrypted format, Cisco NX-OS does not synchronize the user information (passwords, rules, etc.).

Group-Based SNMP Access



Note Because a group is a standard SNMP term used industry-wide, roles are referred to as groups in this SNMP section.

SNMP access rights are organized by groups. Each group in SNMP is similar to a role through the CLI. Each group is defined with three accesses: read access, write access, and notification access. Each access can be enabled or disabled within each group.

You can begin communicating with the agent once your username is created, your roles are set up by your administrator, and you are added to the roles.

Licensing Requirements for SNMP

This feature does not require a license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the *Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide*.

Guidelines and Limitations for SNMP

Cisco NX-OS supports read-only access to Ethernet MIBs.

For more information about supported MIBs, see the following URL:

<http://www.cisco.com/public/sw-center/netmgmt/cmtk/mibs.shtml>

Cisco NX-OS does not support the SNMPv3 noAuthNoPriv security level.

Default SNMP Settings

Table 25: Default SNMP Parameters

Parameters	Default
license notifications	Enabled
linkUp/Down notification type	ietf-extended

Configuring SNMP

Configuring SNMP Users



Note The commands used to configure SNMP users in Cisco NX-OS are different from those used to configure users in Cisco IOS.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# snmp-server user name [auth {md5 sha} passphrase [auto] [priv [aes-128] passphrase] [engineID id] [localizedkey]] Example: switch(config)# snmp-server user Admin auth sha abcd1234 priv abcdefgh	Configures an SNMP user with authentication and privacy parameters. The passphrase can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 64 characters. If you use the localizedkey keyword, the passphrase can be any case-sensitive, alphanumeric string up to 130 characters. The engineID format is a 12-digit, colon-separated decimal number.
Step 3	(Optional) switch# show snmp user Example: switch(config) # show snmp user	Displays information about one or more SNMP users.
Step 4	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure an SNMP user:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server user Admin auth sha abcd1234 priv abcdefgh
```

Enforcing SNMP Message Encryption

You can configure SNMP to require authentication or encryption for incoming requests. By default, the SNMP agent accepts SNMPv3 messages without authentication and encryption. When you enforce privacy, Cisco NX-OS responds with an authorization error for any SNMPv3 PDU request that uses a security level parameter of either **noAuthNoPriv** or **authNoPriv**.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to enforce SNMP message encryption for a specific user:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# snmp-server user name enforcePriv	Enforces SNMP message encryption for this user.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to enforce SNMP message encryption for all users:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# snmp-server globalEnforcePriv	Enforces SNMP message encryption for all users.

Assigning SNMPv3 Users to Multiple Roles

After you configure an SNMP user, you can assign multiple roles for the user.



Note Only users who belong to a network-admin role can assign roles to other users.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# snmp-server user name group	Associates this SNMP user with the configured user role.

Creating SNMP Communities

You can create SNMP communities for SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# snmp-server community name group {ro rw}	Creates an SNMP community string.

Filtering SNMP Requests

You can assign an access list (ACL) to a community to filter incoming SNMP requests. If the assigned ACL allows the incoming request packet, SNMP processes the request. If the ACL denies the request, SNMP drops the request and sends a system message.

Create the ACL with the following parameters:

- Source IP address
- Destination IP address

- Source port
- Destination port
- Protocol (UDP or TCP)

The ACL applies to both IPv4 and IPv6 over UDP and TCP. After creating the ACL, assign the ACL to the SNMP community.



Tip For more information about creating ACLs, see the NX-OS security configuration guide for the Cisco Nexus Series software that you are using.

Use the following command in global configuration mode to assign an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to an SNMPv3 community to filter SNMP requests:

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server community name [use-ipv4acl ipv4acl-name] [use-ipv6acl ipv6acl-name] switch(config)# snmp-server community public use-ipv4acl myacl</pre>	Assigns an IPv4 or IPv6 ACL to an SNMPv3 community to filter SNMP requests.

Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to generate SNMP notifications to multiple host receivers.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv1 traps in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server host ip-address traps version 1 community [udp_port number]</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv1 traps. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The community can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server host ip-address {traps informs} version 2c community [udp_port number]</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The community can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.

You can configure a host receiver for SNMPv3 traps or informs in a global configuration mode.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# snmp-server host <i>ip-address</i> {traps informs} version 3 {auth noauth priv} <i>username</i> [udp_port number]	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The username can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535.



Note The SNMP manager must know the user credentials (authKey/PrivKey) based on the SNMP engineID of the Cisco Nexus device to authenticate and decrypt the SNMPv3 messages.

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv1 trap:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 traps version 1 public
```

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv2 inform:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 informs version 2c public
```

The following example shows how to configure a host receiver for an SNMPv3 inform:

```
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 informs version 3 auth NMS
```

Configuring SNMP Notification Receivers with VRFs

You can configure Cisco NX-OS to use a configured VRF to reach the host receiver. SNMP adds entries into the cExtSnmptargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MIB when you configure the VRF reachability and filtering options for an SNMP notification receiver.



Note You must configure the host before configuring the VRF reachability or filtering options.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch# snmp-server host <i>ip-address</i> use-vrf <i>vrf_name</i> [udp_port number]	Configures SNMP to use the selected VRF to communicate with the host receiver. The IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The VRF name can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535. This command adds an entry into the ExtSnmptargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MB.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure the SNMP server host with IP address 192.0.2.1 to use the VRF named "Blue:"

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 use-vrf Blue
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Filtering SNMP Notifications Based on a VRF

You can configure Cisco NX-OS filter notifications based on the VRF in which the notification occurred.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# snmp-server host ip-address filter-vrf vrf_name [udp_port number]	Filters notifications to the notification host receiver based on the configured VRF. The IP address can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The VRF name can be any alphanumeric string up to 255 characters. The UDP port number range is from 0 to 65535. This command adds an entry into the ExtSnmptargetVrfTable of the CISCO-SNMP-TARGET-EXT-MB.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure filtering of SNMP notifications based on a VRF:

```
switch# configuration terminal
switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 filter-vrf Red
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configuring a Source Interface for Sending Out All SNMP Notifications

You can configure SNMP to use the IP address of an interface as the source IP address for notifications. When a notification is generated, its source IP address is based on the IP address of this configured interface.



Note Configuring the source interface IP address for outgoing trap packets does not guarantee that the device will use the same interface to send the trap. The source interface IP address defines the source address inside of the SNMP trap and the connection is opened with the address of the egress interface as source.

Complete the following steps to configure a source interface for sending out all SNMP notifications:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<pre>switch(config)# snmp-server source-interface {traps informs} if-type if-number</pre> Example: <pre>switch(config) # snmp-server source-interface traps ethernet 2/1</pre>	Configures a source interface for sending out SNMPv2c traps or informs. Use ? to determine the supported interface types.

Example

This example shows how to configure a source interface to sending out SNMPv2c traps:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # snmp-server source-interface traps ethernet 2/1
```

What to do next

To display information about configured source interfaces, enter the **show snmp source-interface** command.

Configuring a Host Receiver for SNMP Notifications



Note This configuration overrides the global source interface configuration.

Complete the following steps to configure a host receiver on a source interface responsible for receiving all SNMP notifications:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # snmp-server host <i>ip-address</i> source-interface <i>if-type if-number</i> [udp_port <i>number</i>] Example: <pre>switch(config) # snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 source-interface traps ethernet 2/1</pre>	Configures a host receiver for SNMPv2c traps or informs. The <i>ip-address</i> can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address. Use ? to determine the supported interface types.

Example

To the following example configures a source interface responsible for receiving all SNMP notifications:

```
switch# config t
switch(config) # snmp-server host 192.0.2.1 source-interface ethernet 2/1
```

What to do next

To display information about configured source interface, enter the **show snmp source-interface** command.

Configuring SNMP for Inband Access

You can configure SNMP for inband access using the following:

- Using SNMP v2 without context—You can use a community that is mapped to a context. In this case, the SNMP client does not need to know about the context.
- Using SNMP v2 with context—The SNMP client needs to specify the context by specifying a community; for example, <community>@<context>.
- Using SNMP v3—You can specify the context.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configuration terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# snmp-server context <i>context-name vrf vrf-name</i>	Maps an SNMP context to the management VRF or default VRF. Custom VRFs are not supported. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	switch(config)# snmp-server community <i>community-name</i> group <i>group-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context and identifies the group to which the community belongs. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
Step 4	switch(config)# snmp-server mib community-map <i>community-name</i> context <i>context-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.

Example

The following SNMPv2 example shows how to map a community named snmpdefault to a context:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)# snmp-server community snmpdefault group network-admin
switch(config)# snmp-server mib community-map snmpdefault context def
switch(config)#
```

The following SNMPv2 example shows how to configure and inband access to the community comm which is not mapped:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)# snmp-server community comm group network-admin
switch(config)#
```

The following SNMPv3 example shows how to use a v3 username and password:

```
switch# config t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# snmp-server context def vrf default
switch(config)#
```

Enabling SNMP Notifications

You can enable or disable notifications. If you do not specify a notification name, Cisco NX-OS enables all notifications.



Note The **snmp-server enable traps** CLI command enables both traps and informs, depending on the configured notification host receivers.

The following table lists the CLI commands that enable the notifications for Cisco NX-OS MIBs.

Table 26: Enabling SNMP Notifications

MIB	Related Commands
All notifications	snmp-server enable traps

MIB	Related Commands
BRIDGE-MIB	snmp-server enable traps bridge newroot snmp-server enable traps bridge topologychange
CISCO-AAA-SERVER-MIB	snmp-server enable traps aaa
ENITY-MIB, CISCO-ENTITY-FRU-CONTROL-MIB, CISCO-ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB	snmp-server enable traps entity snmp-server enable traps entity fru
CISCO-LICENSE-MGR-MIB	snmp-server enable traps license
IF-MIB	snmp-server enable traps link
CISCO-PSM-MIB	snmp-server enable traps port-security
SNMPv2-MIB	snmp-server enable traps snmp snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication
CISCO-FCC-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcc
CISCO-DM-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcdomain
CISCO-NS-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcns
CISCO-FCS-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fcs discovery-complete snmp-server enable traps fcs request-reject
CISCO-FDMI-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fdmi
CISCO-FSPF-MIB	snmp-server enable traps fspf
CISCO-PSM-MIB	snmp-server enable traps port-security
CISCO-RSCN-MIB	snmp-server enable traps rscn snmp-server enable traps rscn els snmp-server enable traps rscn ils
CISCO-ZS-MIB	snmp-server enable traps zone snmp-server enable traps zone default-zone-behavior-change snmp-server enable traps zone enhanced-zone-db-change snmp-server enable traps zone merge-failure snmp-server enable traps zone merge-success snmp-server enable traps zone request-reject snmp-server enable traps zone unsupp-mem

MIB	Related Commands
CISCO-CONFIG-MAN-MIB Note Supports no MIB objects except the following notification: ccmCLIRunningConfigChanged	snmp-server enable traps config



Note The license notifications are enabled by default.

To enable the specified notification in the global configuration mode, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps	Enables all SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps aaa [server-state-change]	Enables the AAA SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps entity [fru]	Enables the ENTITY-MIB SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps license	Enables the license SNMP notification.
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps port-security	Enables the port security SNMP notifications.
switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps snmp [authentication]	Enables the SNMP agent notifications.

Configuring Link Notifications

You can configure which linkUp/linkDown notifications to enable on a device. You can enable the following types of linkUp/linkDown notifications:

- **cieLinkDown**—Enables the Cisco extended link state down notification.
- **cieLinkUp**—Enables the Cisco extended link state up notification.
- **cisco-xcvr-mon-status-chg**—Enables the Cisco interface transceiver monitor status change notification.
- **delayed-link-state-change**—Enables the delayed link state change.
- **extended-linkUp**—Enables the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) extended link state up notification.
- **extended-linkDown**—Enables the IETF extended link state down notification.
- **linkDown**—Enables the IETF Link state down notification.
- **linkUp**—Enables the IETF Link state up notification.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	snmp-server enable traps link [cieLinkDown cieLinkUp cisco-xcvr-mon-status-chg delayed-link-state-change] extended-linkUp extended-linkDown linkDown linkUp] Example: switch(config)# snmp-server enable traps link cieLinkDown	Enables the link SNMP notifications.

Disabling Link Notifications on an Interface

You can disable linkUp and linkDown notifications on an individual interface. You can use these limit notifications on a flapping interface (an interface that transitions between up and down repeatedly).

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface <i>type slot/port</i>	Specifies the interface to be changed.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# no snmp trap link-status	Disables SNMP link-state traps for the interface. This feature is enabled by default.

Enabling One-Time Authentication for SNMP over TCP

You can enable a one-time authentication for SNMP over a TCP session.

Command	Purpose
switch(config)# snmp-server tcp-session [auth]	Enables a one-time authentication for SNMP over a TCP session. This feature is disabled by default.

Assigning SNMP Switch Contact and Location Information

You can assign the switch contact information, which is limited to 32 characters (without spaces), and the switch location.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configuration terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# snmp-server contact <i>name</i>	Configures sysContact, the SNMP contact name.
Step 3	switch(config)# snmp-server location <i>name</i>	Configures sysLocation, the SNMP location.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show snmp	Displays information about one or more destination profiles.
Step 5	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Saves this configuration change.

Configuring the Context to Network Entity Mapping

You can configure an SNMP context to map to a logical network entity, such as a protocol instance or VRF.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configuration terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# snmp-server context <i>context-name</i> [instance <i>instance-name</i>] [vrf <i>vrf-name</i>] [topology <i>topology-name</i>]	Maps an SNMP context to a protocol instance, VRF, or topology. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
Step 3	switch(config)# snmp-server mib community-map <i>community-name</i> context <i>context-name</i>	Maps an SNMPv2c community to an SNMP context. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# no snmp-server context <i>context-name</i> [instance <i>instance-name</i>] [vrf <i>vrf-name</i>] [topology <i>topology-name</i>]	Deletes the mapping between an SNMP context and a protocol instance, VRF, or topology. The names can be any alphanumeric string up to 32 characters. Note Do not enter an instance, VRF, or topology to delete a context mapping. If you use the instance , vrf , or topology keywords, you configure a mapping between the context and a zero-length string.

Disabling SNMP

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# configure terminal switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<pre>switch(config) # no snmp-server protocol enable</pre> Example: <pre>no snmp-server protocol enable</pre>	Disables SNMP. SNMP is disabled by default.

Verifying the SNMP Configuration

To display SNMP configuration information, perform one of the following tasks:

Command	Purpose
show snmp	Displays the SNMP status.
show snmp community	Displays the SNMP community strings.
show snmp engineID	Displays the SNMP engineID.
show snmp group	Displays SNMP roles.
show snmp sessions	Displays SNMP sessions.
show snmp trap	Displays the SNMP notifications enabled or disabled.
show snmp user	Displays SNMPv3 users.

Feature History for SNMP

Table 27: Feature History for SNMP

Feature Name	Releases	Information
IPv6 support	5.2(1)N1(1)	This feature was introduced.



CHAPTER 15

Configuring RMON

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About RMON, on page 169](#)
- [Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON, on page 170](#)
- [Verifying the RMON Configuration, on page 170](#)
- [Default RMON Settings, on page 171](#)
- [Configuring RMON Alarms, on page 171](#)
- [Configuring RMON Events, on page 172](#)

Information About RMON

RMON is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) standard monitoring specification that allows various network agents and console systems to exchange network monitoring data. The Cisco NX-OS supports RMON alarms, events, and logs to monitor Cisco Nexus device.

An RMON alarm monitors a specific management information base (MIB) object for a specified interval, triggers an alarm at a specified threshold value (threshold), and resets the alarm at another threshold value. You can use alarms with RMON events to generate a log entry or an SNMP notification when the RMON alarm triggers.

RMON is disabled by default and no events or alarms are configured in Cisco Nexus devices. You can configure your RMON alarms and events by using the CLI or an SNMP-compatible network management station.

RMON Alarms

You can set an alarm on any MIB object that resolves into an SNMP INTEGER type. The specified object must be an existing SNMP MIB object in standard dot notation (for example, 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17 represents ifOutOctets.17).

When you create an alarm, you specify the following parameters:

- MIB object to monitor
- Sampling interval—The interval that the Cisco Nexus device uses to collect a sample value of the MIB object.
- Sample type—Absolute samples take the current snapshot of the MIB object value. Delta samples take two consecutive samples and calculate the difference between them.

- Rising threshold—The value at which the Cisco Nexus device triggers a rising alarm or resets a falling alarm.
- Falling threshold—The value at which the Cisco Nexus device triggers a falling alarm or resets a rising alarm.
- Events—The action that the Cisco Nexus device takes when an alarm (rising or falling) triggers.



Note Use the `hcalarms` option to set an alarm on a 64-bit integer MIB object.

For example, you can set a delta type rising alarm on an error counter MIB object. If the error counter delta exceeds this value, you can trigger an event that sends an SNMP notification and logs the rising alarm event. This rising alarm does not occur again until the delta sample for the error counter drops below the falling threshold.



Note The falling threshold must be less than the rising threshold.

RMON Events

You can associate a particular event to each RMON alarm. RMON supports the following event types:

- SNMP notification—Sends an SNMP risingAlarm or fallingAlarm notification when the associated alarm triggers.
- Log—Adds an entry in the RMON log table when the associated alarm triggers.
- Both—Sends an SNMP notification and adds an entry in the RMON log table when the associated alarm triggers.

You can specify a different even for a falling alarm and a rising alarm.

Configuration Guidelines and Limitations for RMON

RMON has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- You must configure an SNMP user and a notification receiver to use the SNMP notification event type.
- You can only configure an RMON alarm on a MIB object that resolves to an integer.

Verifying the RMON Configuration

Use the following commands to verify the RMON configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<code>show rmon alarms</code>	Displays information about RMON alarms.

Command	Purpose
show rmon events	Displays information about RMON events.
show rmon hcalarms	Displays information about RMON hcalarms.
show rmon logs	Displays information about RMON logs.

Default RMON Settings

The following table lists the default settings for RMON parameters.

Table 28: Default RMON Parameters

Parameters	Default
Alarms	None configured.
Events	None configured.

Configuring RMON Alarms

You can configure RMON alarms on any integer-based SNMP MIB object.

You can optionally specify the following parameters:

- The eventnumber to trigger if the rising or falling threshold exceeds the specified limit.
- The owner of the alarm.

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

Before you begin

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	<code>switch# configure terminal</code>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	<code>switch(config)# rmon alarm index mib-object sample-interval {absolute delta} rising-threshold value [event-index] falling-threshold value [event-index] [owner name]</code>	Creates an RMON alarm. The value range is from -2147483647 to 2147483647. The owner name can be any alphanumeric string.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	switch(config)# rmon hcalarm <i>index</i> <i>mib-object sample-interval</i> { absolute delta } rising-threshold-high <i>value</i> rising-threshold-low <i>value</i> [<i>event-index</i>] falling-threshold-high <i>value</i> falling-threshold-low <i>value</i> [<i>event-index</i>] [<i>owner name</i>] [<i>storagetype type</i>]	Creates an RMON high-capacity alarm. The value range is from -2147483647 to 2147483647. The owner name can be any alphanumeric string. The storage type range is from 1 to 5.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# show rmon { alarms hcalarms }	Displays information about RMON alarms or high-capacity alarms.
Step 5	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Saves this configuration change.

Example

The following example shows how to configure RMON alarms:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# rmon alarm 1 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17.83886080 5 delta rising-threshold 5 1
falling-threshold 0 owner test
switch(config)# exit
switch# show rmon alarms
Alarm 1 is active, owned by test
Monitors 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17.83886080 every 5 second(s)
Taking delta samples, last value was 0
Rising threshold is 5, assigned to event 1
Falling threshold is 0, assigned to event 0
On startup enable rising or falling alarm
```

Configuring RMON Events

You can configure RMON events to associate with RMON alarms. You can reuse the same event with multiple RMON alarms.

Ensure you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

Before you begin

Ensure that you have configured an SNMP user and enabled SNMP notifications.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config)# rmon event <i>index</i> [description <i>string</i>] [log] [trap] [owner <i>name</i>]	Configures an RMON event. The description string and owner name can be any alphanumeric string.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show rmon { alarms hcalarms }	Displays information about RMON alarms or high-capacity alarms.
Step 4	(Optional) switch# copy running-config startup-config	Saves this configuration change.



CHAPTER 16

Configuring SPAN

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About SPAN, on page 175](#)
- [SPAN Sources, on page 175](#)
- [Characteristics of Source Ports, on page 176](#)
- [SPAN Destinations, on page 177](#)
- [Characteristics of Destination Ports, on page 177](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN, on page 177](#)
- [Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session, on page 178](#)
- [Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port, on page 178](#)
- [Configuring MTU Truncation for Each SPAN Session, on page 179](#)
- [Configuring the Rate Limit for SPAN Traffic, on page 180](#)
- [Configuring Fibre Channel Destination Port, on page 181](#)
- [Configuring Source Ports, on page 182](#)
- [Configuring Source Port Channels, VSANs, or VLANs, on page 182](#)
- [Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session, on page 183](#)
- [Activating a SPAN Session, on page 184](#)
- [Suspending a SPAN Session, on page 184](#)
- [Troubleshooting SPAN session issues, on page 185](#)
- [Displaying SPAN Information, on page 186](#)

Information About SPAN

SPAN Sources

SPAN sources refer to the interfaces from which traffic can be monitored. The Cisco Nexus device supports Ethernet, Fibre Channel, virtual Fibre Channel, port channels, SAN port channels, VSANs and VLANs as SPAN sources. With VLANs or VSANs, all supported interfaces in the specified VLAN or VSAN are included as SPAN sources. You can choose the SPAN traffic in the ingress direction, the egress direction, or both directions for Ethernet, Fibre Channel, and virtual Fibre Channel source interfaces:

- **Ingress source (Rx)**—Traffic entering the device through this source port is copied to the SPAN destination port.

- Egress source (Tx)—Traffic exiting the device through this source port is copied to the SPAN destination port.

If the SPAN source interface sends more than 6-Gbps traffic or if traffic bursts too much, the device drops traffic on the source interface. You can use the **switchport monitor rate-limit 1G** command on the SPAN destination to reduce the dropping of actual traffic on the source interface; however, SPAN traffic is restricted to 1 Gbps. For additional information see [Configuring the Rate Limit for SPAN Traffic, on page 180](#)



Note The **switchport monitor rate-limit 1G** command is not supported on the Nexus 5500 platform.

On the Cisco Nexus 5548 device, Fibre Channel ports and VSAN ports cannot be configured as ingress source ports in a SPAN session.

Characteristics of Source Ports

A source port, also called a monitored port, is a switched interface that you monitor for network traffic analysis. The switch supports any number of ingress source ports (up to the maximum number of available ports on the switch) and any number of source VLANs or VSANs.

A source port has these characteristics:

- Cannot be a destination port.
- Can be configured with a direction (ingress, egress, or both) to monitor. For VLAN and VSAN sources, the monitored direction can only be ingress and applies to all physical ports in the group. The RX/TX option is not available for VLAN or VSAN SPAN sessions.
- There is no limit to the number of egress SPAN ports, but there is upper limit of 128 source ports in the monitor session.
- Port Channel and SAN Port Channel interfaces can be configured as ingress or egress source ports.
- Can be in the same or different VLANs or VSANs.
- For VLAN or VSAN SPAN sources, all active ports in the source VLAN or VSAN are included as source ports.



-
- Note**
- If some of the FEX ports are being used by a SPAN session as source ports, the remaining FEX ports cannot be a part of a different SPAN session.
 - The maximum number of source ports per SPAN session is 128 ports.
 - The maximum number of SPAN sessions supported on the Nexus 5000 Series and Nexus 5500 Series switches is 4.
 - The maximum number of SPAN sessions supported on the Nexus 5600 Series and Nexus 6000 Series switches is 16.
-

SPAN Destinations

SPAN destinations refer to the interfaces that monitors source ports. The Cisco Nexus Series device supports Ethernet and Fibre Channel interfaces as SPAN destinations.

Source SPAN	Dest SPAN
Ethernet	Ethernet
Fibre Channel	Fibre Channel
Fibre Channel	Ethernet (FCoE)
Virtual Fibre Channel	Fibre Channel
Virtual Fibre Channel	Ethernet (FCoE)

Characteristics of Destination Ports

Each local SPAN session must have a destination port (also called a monitoring port) that receives a copy of traffic from the source ports, VSANs, or VLANs. A destination port has these characteristics:

- Cannot be a source port.
- Cannot be a port channel or SAN port channel group.
- Does not participate in spanning tree while the SPAN session is active.
- Is excluded from the source list and is not monitored if it belongs to a source VLAN of any SPAN session.
- Receives copies of sent and received traffic for all monitored source ports.
- The FEX interface cannot be a span destination.

Guidelines and Limitations for SPAN

SPAN traffic is rate-limited as follows on Nexus 5500 series switches to prevent a negative impact to production traffic:

- SPAN is rate-limited to 5 Gbps for every 8 ports (one ASIC).
- RX-SPAN is rate-limited to 0.71 Gbps per port when the RX-traffic on the port exceeds 5 Gbps.

Creating or Deleting a SPAN Session

You create a SPAN session by assigning a session number using the **monitor session** command. If the session already exists, any additional configuration information is added to the existing session.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# monitor session <i>session-number</i>	Enters the monitor configuration mode. New session configuration is added to the existing session configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a SPAN monitor session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 2
switch(config) #
```

Configuring an Ethernet Destination Port

You can configure an Ethernet interface as a SPAN destination port.



Note The SPAN destination port can only be a physical port on the switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface ethernet <i>slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode for the Ethernet interface with the specified slot and port. Note To enable the switchport monitor command on virtual ethernet ports, you can use the interface vethernet <i>slot/port</i> command.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport monitor	Enters monitor mode for the specified Ethernet interface. Priority flow control is disabled when the port is configured as a SPAN destination.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	switch(config-if)# exit	Reverts to global configuration mode.
Step 5	switch(config)# monitor session <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.
Step 6	switch(config-monitor)# destination interface ethernet <i>slot/port</i>	Configures the Ethernet SPAN destination port. Note To enable the virtual ethernet port as destination interface in the monitor configuration, you can use the destination interface vethernet <i>slot/port</i> command.

Example

The following example shows how to configure an Ethernet SPAN destination port (HIF):

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface ethernet100/1/24
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 1
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface ethernet100/1/24
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a virtual ethernet (VETH) SPAN destination port:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface vethernet10
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface vethernet10
switch(config-monitor)#
```

Configuring MTU Truncation for Each SPAN Session

To reduce the SPAN traffic bandwidth, you can configure the maximum bytes allowed for each replicated packet in a SPAN session. This value is called the maximum transmission unit (MTU) truncation size. Any SPAN packet larger than the configured size is truncated to the configured size.



Note MTU Truncation is not supported for SPAN-on-Drop sessions.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config) # monitor session <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode and specifies the SPAN session for which the MTU truncation size is to be configured.
Step 3	switch(config-monitor) # [no] mtu	Configures the MTU truncation size for packets in the specified SPAN session. The range is from 64 to 1518 bytes.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config-monitor) # show monitor session <i>session-number</i>	Displays the status of SPAN sessions, including the configuration status of MTU truncation, the maximum bytes allowed for each packet per session, and the modules on which MTU truncation is and is not supported.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config-monitor) # copy running-config startup-config	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to configure MTU truncation for a SPAN session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 3
switch(config-monitor) # mtu
switch(config-monitor) # copy running-config startup-config
switch(config-monitor) #
```

Configuring the Rate Limit for SPAN Traffic

By configuring a rate limit for SPAN traffic to 1Gbps across the entire monitor session, you can avoid impacting the monitored production traffic.

On Nexus 5000 series switches:

- When spanning more than 1Gbps to a 1 Gb SPAN destination interface, SPAN source traffic will not drop.
- When spanning more than 6 Gbps (but less than 10Gbps) to a 10Gb SPAN destination interface, the SPAN traffic is limited to 1Gbps even though the destination/sniffer is capable of 10Gbps.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface ethernet <i>slot/port</i>	Enters interface configuration mode for the specified Ethernet interface selected by the slot and port values.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport monitor rate-limit 1G	Specifies that the rate limit is 1 Gbps.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# exit	Reverts to global configuration mode.

Example

This example shows how to limit the bandwidth on Ethernet interface 1/2 to 1 Gbps:

```
switch(config)# interface ethernet 1/2
switch(config-if)# switchport monitor rate-limit 1G
switch(config-if)#
```

Configuring Fibre Channel Destination Port



Note The SPAN destination port can only be a physical port on the switch.

You can configure a Fibre Channel port as a SPAN destination port.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# interface fc slot/port	Enters interface configuration mode for the specified Fibre Channel interface selected by the slot and port values.
Step 3	switch(config-if)# switchport mode SD	Sets the interface to SPAN destination (SD) mode.
Step 4	switch(config-if)# switchport speed 1000	Sets the interface speed to 1000. The auto speed option is not allowed.
Step 5	switch(config-if)# exit	Reverts to global configuration mode.
Step 6	switch(config)# monitor session session-number	Enters the monitor configuration mode.
Step 7	switch(config-monitor)# destination interface fc slot/port	Configures the Fibre Channel destination port.

Example

The following example shows how to configure an Ethernet SPAN destination port:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# interface fc 2/4
switch(config-if)# switchport mode SD
switch(config-if)# switchport speed 1000
switch(config-if)# exit
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# destination interface fc 2/4

```

Configuring Source Ports

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # monitor session <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified monitoring session.
Step 3	switch(config-monitor) # source interface type <i>slot/port [rx tx both]</i>	Adds an Ethernet SPAN source port and specifies the traffic direction in which to duplicate packets. You can enter a range of Ethernet, Fibre Channel, or virtual Fibre Channel ports. You can specify the traffic direction to duplicate as ingress (Rx), egress (Tx), or both. By default, the direction is both.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a virtual Fibre Channel SPAN source port:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface vfc 129
switch(config-monitor)#

```

Configuring Source Port Channels, VSANs, or VLANs

You can configure the source channels for a SPAN session. These ports can be port channels SAN port channels, VSANs and VLANs. The monitored direction can be ingress, egress, or both and applies to all physical ports in the group.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	switch(config) # monitor session <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.
Step 3	switch(config-monitor) # source {interface {port-channel san-port-channel} <i>channel-number [rx tx both] vlan</i> <i>vlan-range vsan vsan-range }</i>	Configures port channel, SAN port channel, VLAN, or VSAN sources. For VLAN or VSAN sources, the monitored direction is implicit.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a port channel SPAN source:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 1 rx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 3 tx
switch(config-monitor)# source interface port-channel 5 both
switch(config-monitor)#
```

This example shows how to configure a SAN port channel SPAN source:

```
switch(config-monitor)#switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source interface san-port-channel 3 rx
switch(config-monitor)#
```

The following example shows how to configure a VLAN SPAN source:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source vlan 1
switch(config-monitor)#
```

switch(config-monitor)#This example shows how to configure a VSAN SPAN source:

```
switch(config-monitor)#switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor)# source vsan 1
switch(config-monitor)#
```

Configuring the Description of a SPAN Session

For ease of reference, you can provide a descriptive name for a SPAN session.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # monitor session <i>session-number</i>	Enters monitor configuration mode for the specified SPAN session.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	switch(config-monitor) # description <i>description</i>	Creates a descriptive name for the SPAN session.

Example

The following example shows how to configure a SPAN session description:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 2
switch(config-monitor) # description monitoring ports eth2/2-eth2/4
switch(config-monitor) #
```

Activating a SPAN Session

The default is to keep the session state shut. You can open a session that duplicates packets from sources to destinations.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # no monitor session {all <i>session-number</i> } shut	Opens the specified SPAN session or all sessions.

Example

The following example shows how to activate a SPAN session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # no monitor session 3 shut
```

Suspending a SPAN Session

By default, the session state is **shut**.



Note

The Cisco Nexus switch supports two active SPAN sessions. The Cisco Nexus 5548 Switch supports four active SPAN sessions. When you configure more than two SPAN sessions, the first two sessions are active. During startup, the order of active sessions is reversed; the last two sessions are active. For example, if you configured ten sessions 1 to 10 where 1 and 2 are active, after a reboot, sessions 9 and 10 will be active. To enable deterministic behavior, explicitly suspend the sessions 3 to 10 with the **monitor session session-number shut** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config) # monitor session {all session-number} shut	Suspends the specified SPAN session or all sessions.

Example

The following example shows how to suspend a SPAN session:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config) # monitor session 3 shut
switch(config) #
```

Troubleshooting SPAN session issues

If a SPAN session is down, do the following:

- Check if one of the destination port is operational by performing the following:
 - Use the **show running interface** *interface* command and check if the switchport monitor is configured.
 - Use the **show interface** *interface* command and check if the destination interface shows the status as "admin up".
- Use the **show interface** *interface* command to check if one of the source port is operational and if the source interface shows the status as "admin up".

Troubleshooting SPAN session with large number of source ports issues

Table 29: Troubleshooting SPAN session with large number of source ports

Problem Description	Solution	Recommendation
When a SPAN session is configured with maximum supported range of 128 source ports at one go, the configuration session may encounter "Service not responding" message.	Remove the ports and configure them in smaller ranges (example, 1 to 48) and then use the shutdown and no shutdown command on the session.	Configure the individual ports in small ranges (example, 1 to 48).

After using the shutdown and then no shutdown on a range of SPAN session configured with maximum of ports (example, 128), some sessions do not come up.	Remove some ports from the specific SPAN session. Add the removed ports back to the same SPAN session and then use the no shutdown command.	Use the shutdown command on each port.
After creating a SPAN session with 128 source ports, the no shutdown command displays a "Service not responding" message.	Use the no shutdown command repeatedly to bring up the SPAN session.	

Displaying SPAN Information

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# show monitor [session {all session-number range session-range} [brief]]	Displays the SPAN configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to display SPAN session information:

```
switch# show monitor
SESSION STATE REASON DESCRIPTION
-----
2 up The session is up
3 down Session suspended
4 down No hardware resource
```

The following example shows how to display SPAN session details:

```
switch# show monitor session 2
session 2
-----
type : local
state : up
acl-name : acl1
source intf :

source VLANs :
rx :
source VSANs :
rx : 1
destination ports : Eth3/1
```



CHAPTER 17

Configuring ERSPAN

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About ERSPAN, on page 187](#)
- [Licensing Requirements for ERSPAN, on page 189](#)
- [Prerequisites for ERSPAN, on page 189](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN, on page 189](#)
- [Default Settings for ERSPAN, on page 191](#)
- [Configuring ERSPAN, on page 191](#)
- [Configuration Examples for ERSPAN, on page 199](#)
- [Additional References, on page 200](#)

Information About ERSPAN

ERSPAN transports mirrored traffic over an IP network, which provides remote monitoring of multiple switches across your network. The traffic is encapsulated at the source router and is transferred across the network. The packet is decapsulated at the destination router and then sent to the destination interface.

ERSPAN consists of an ERSPAN source session, routable ERSPAN generic routing encapsulation (GRE)-encapsulated traffic, and an ERSPAN destination session. You can separately configure ERSPAN source sessions and destination sessions on different switches.

ERSPAN Source Sessions

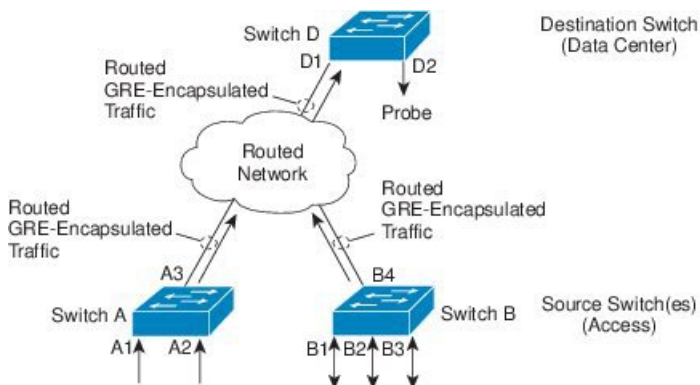
An ERSPAN source session is defined by the following:

- A session ID.
- A list of source ports, source VLANs, or source VSANs to be monitored by the session.
- An ERSPAN flow ID.
- Optional attributes related to the GRE envelope such as IP TOS and TTL.
- Destination IP address.
- Virtual Routing and Forwarding tables.

ERSPAN source sessions do not copy ERSPAN GRE-encapsulated traffic from source ports. Each ERSPAN source session can have ports, VLANs, or VSANs as sources. However, there are some limitations. For more information, see Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN.

The following figure shows an example ERSPAN configuration.

Figure 4: ERSPAN Configuration



Monitored Traffic

By default, ERSPAN monitors all traffic, including multicast and bridge protocol data unit (BPDU) frames.

The direction of the traffic that ERSPAN monitors depends on the source, as follows:

- For a source port, the ERSPAN can monitor ingress, egress, or both ingress and egress traffic.
- For a source VLAN or source VSAN, the ERSPAN can monitor only ingress traffic.

ERSPAN Sources

The interfaces from which traffic can be monitored are called ERSPAN sources. Sources designate the traffic to monitor and whether to copy ingress, egress, or both directions of traffic. ERSPAN sources include the following:

- Source Ports—A source port is a port monitored for traffic analysis. You can configure source ports in any VLAN, and trunk ports can be configured as source ports and mixed with nontrunk source ports.
- Source VLANs—A source VLAN is a virtual local area network (VLAN) that is monitored for traffic analysis.
- Source VSANs—A source VSAN is a virtual storage area network (VSAN) that is monitored for traffic analysis.

Truncated ERSPAN

Truncated ERSPAN can be used to reduce the amount of fabric or network bandwidth used in sending ERSPAN packets.

The default is no truncation so switches or routers receiving large ERSPAN packets might drop these oversized packets.



Note Do not enable the truncated ERSPAN feature if the destination ERSPAN router is a Cisco Nexus 6001 or Cisco Nexus 6004 switch because the Cisco Nexus 6000 Series switch drops these truncated packets.

Multiple ERSPAN Sessions

For information about shutting down ERSPAN sessions, see [Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session, on page 197](#).

High Availability

The ERSPAN feature supports stateless restarts. After a reboot, the running configuration is applied.

Licensing Requirements for ERSPAN

The following table shows the licensing requirements for this feature:

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	ERSPAN requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the <i>License and Copyright Information for Cisco NX-OS Software</i> available at the following URL: http://www.cisco.com/US/products/switches/4010/related_documents/nxos.html

Prerequisites for ERSPAN

ERSPAN has the following prerequisite:

- You must first configure the Ethernet interfaces for ports on each device to support the desired ERSPAN configuration. For more information, see the Interfaces configuration guide for your platform.

Guidelines and Limitations for ERSPAN

ERSPAN has the following guidelines and limitations:

- Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switches support only ERSPAN source sessions. Destination sessions are not supported.
- The Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switch supports a maximum of 2 sessions.
- The Cisco Nexus 5500 Series switch supports a maximum of 4 sessions.

- The maximum number of ports for each ERSPAN session is 32.
- You can have source ports, source VLANs, and source VSANs in one ERSPAN session.
- On Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switches, ERSPAN can monitor ingress, egress, or both ingress and egress traffic on a source port and only ingress traffic on source VLANs or source VSANs as long as the VLAN is not mapped to a VSAN.
- On Cisco 5500 Series switches, source ports and source VLANs can be in the same ERSPAN session.
- ERSPAN traffic can exit the switch through a Layer 2 interface, Layer 3 interface, port channel, or FabricPath core port.
- The Cisco Nexus 5000 series switch cannot reach a destination IP address of a remote switch through a virtual Ethernet port or FEX port. This functionality is not supported.
- ERSPAN traffic is not load balanced if the reachability to a destination IP address is a Layer 3 ECMP or a port channel. In the case of ECMP, the ERSPAN traffic is sent to only one next-hop router or one member of the port channel.
- ERSPAN on the Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switch supports Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, TenGigabit Ethernet, and port channel interfaces as source ports for a source session.
- When a session is configured through the ERSPAN configuration commands, the session ID and the session type cannot be changed. In order to change them, you must first use the no version of the configuration command to remove the session and then reconfigure the session.
- ERSPAN traffic might compete with regular data traffic.
- ERSPAN traffic is assigned to the QoS class-default system class (qos-group 0).
- To ensure that data traffic is prioritized over ERSPAN traffic, you can create a QoS system class with prioritization above the class-default system class on the ERSPAN destination port.
On Layer 3 networks, ERSPAN traffic can be marked with a the desired Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value using the ip dscp command. By default, ERSPAN traffic is marked with a DSCP value of 0.
- ERSPAN can monitor ingress traffic on a source VSAN only on Cisco Nexus 5010 and 5020 switches.
- ERSPAN cannot monitor egress traffic on source VLANs and VSANs on any Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switch.
- ERSPAN can monitor ingress, egress, or both ingress and egress traffic on a source port.
- VSANs as ERSPAN sources are not allowed on Cisco Nexus 5548 and 5596 switches.
- ERSPAN source sessions are supported on F3 Series modules. Beginning with Cisco NX-OS Release 7.0, ERSPAN destination sessions are also supported on these modules. However, ERSPAN ACL sessions are not supported on F3 Series modules.
- The SPAN session ignores any permit or deny actions specified in the access-list, and spans only the packets that match the access-list filter criteria.

Default Settings for ERSPAN

The following table lists the default settings for ERSPAN parameters.

Table 30: Default ERSPAN Parameters

Parameters	Default
ERSPAN sessions	Created in the shut state.
Truncated ERSPAN	Disabled.

Configuring ERSPAN

Configuring an ERSPAN Source Session

The ERSPAN source session defines the session configuration parameters and the ports or VLANs to be monitored. This section describes how to configure an ERSPAN source session.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configuration terminal Example: <pre>switch# config t switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	monitor session <i>span-session-number</i> type {erspan-source local} Example: <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	<p>Defines an ERSPAN source session using the session ID and the session type, and places the command in ERSPAN monitor source session configuration mode.</p> <p>The <i>span-session-number</i> argument range is from 1 to 1024. The same session number cannot be used more than once.</p> <p>The session IDs for source sessions are in the same global ID space, so each session ID is globally unique for both session types.</p> <p>The session ID (configured by the <i>span-session-number</i> argument) and the session type (configured by the erspan-source keyword) cannot be changed once entered. To change session ID or session type, use the no version of the command to remove the session and then recreate the session through the</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
		command with a new session ID or a new session type.
Step 3	(Optional) description <i>erspan_session_description</i> Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# description sourcel	Describes the ERSPAN source session. The <i>erspan_session_description</i> argument can be up to 240 characters and cannot contain special characters or spaces.
Step 4	source interface { <i>ethernet slot/chassis number</i> <i>portchannel number</i> } Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface eth 1/1	Associates the ERSPAN source session number with the source ports (1-255).
Step 5	source vlan <i>number</i> Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# source vlan 1	Associates the ERSPAN source session number with the VLANs (1-4096).
Step 6	source vsan <i>number</i> Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# source vsan 1	On Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switches, specifies the VSAN ID number. The range is 1 to 4093. On Cisco Nexus 5500 Series switches, you cannot configure source VSANs.
Step 7	destination ip <i>ip-address</i> Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 192.0.2.2	Configures the destination IP address in the ERSPAN session. Only one destination IP address is supported per ERSPAN source session.
Step 8	erspan-id <i>flow-id</i> Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# erspan-id 5	Configures the flow ID to identify the ERSPAN flow. The range is from 1 to 1023.
Step 9	vrf { <i>vrf-name</i> default } Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default	Configures the VRF to use instead of the global routing table. You can use a VRF that you have specifically configured or the default VRF.
Step 10	(Optional) ip ttl <i>ttl-number</i> Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# ip ttl 5	Configures the IP time-to-live (TTL) value of the packets in the ERSPAN traffic. Valid values are from 1 to 255. The default value is 255.
Step 11	(Optional) ip dscp <i>dscp_value</i> Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# ip dscp 42	Configures the IP Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) value of the packets in the ERSPAN traffic. Valid values are from 0 to 63. The default value is 0.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 12	no shut Example: <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut</pre>	Enables the ERSPAN source session. By default, the session is created in the shut state. Note On Cisco Nexus 5000 Series switches, only two ERSPAN source sessions can be running simultaneously. On Cisco Nexus 5500 Series switches, up to four source sessions can be running simultaneously.
Step 13	exit Example: <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# exit switch(config)# exit</pre>	Updates the configuration and exits ERSPAN source session configuration mode.
Step 14	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring a Source Rate Limit for an ERSPAN Session

Depending upon the platform, each TCAM region might have a different minimum/maximum/aggregate size restriction. The default size of the EFP TCAM for IPv4 Egress VACL (e-vacl) is 512 and Egress RACL (e-racl) is 512.

To enable the ERSPAN rate-limit feature, you must carve e-racl TCAM region to program TCAM entry in the EFP TCAM to match on ERSPAN mirror copy traffic and provide policer result with the new configured rate-limit. If the default values of the egress TCAM are not changed or if the e-racl region has a non-zero value, then you need not explicitly carve TCAM to enable ERSPAN egress rate-limit feature. However, if the e-racl region was carved to be zero earlier then you must resize other TCAM regions to allocate entries for e-racl region. After TCAM carving, you must save the configuration and reload the switch.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: <pre>switch# config t switch(config)#</pre>	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	monitor session {session-number all} type erspan-source Example:	Configures an ERSPAN source session.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<pre>switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	
Step 3	<p>hardware profile tcam region {arpacl {ipv6-e-racl e-racl} ifacl ipsg {ipv6-qos qos} qoslbl {ipv6-racl racl} vacl } <i>tcam_size</i></p>	<p>Changes the ACL TCAM region size.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • arpacl—Configures the size of the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) ACL (ARPAcl) TCAM region. • e-racl—Configures the size of the egress router ACL (ERACL) TCAM region. • e-vacl—Configures the size of the egress VLAN ACL (EVACL) TCAM region. • ifacl—Configures the size of the interface ACL (ifacl) TCAM region. The maximum number of entries is 1500. • ipsg—Configures the size of the IP Source Guard (IPSG) TCAM region. • qos—Configures the size of the quality of service (QoS) TCAM region. • qoslbl—Configures the size of the QoS Label (qoslbl) TCAM region. • racl—Configures the size of the router ACL (RAcl) TCAM region. • vacl—Configures the size of the VLAN ACL (VAcl) TCAM region. • <i>tcam_size</i>—TCAM size. The range is from 0 to 2,14,74, 83, 647 entries. <p>Note vacl and e-vacl TCAM regions should be set to the same size. You must carve e-racl regions with non-zero TCAM values.</p>
Step 4	<p>copy running-config startup-config</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	<p>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</p>
Step 5	<p>switch(config)# show hardware profile tcam region</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# show hardware profile tcam region</pre>	<p>Displays the TCAM sizes that will be applicable on the next reload of the switch.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	<pre>switch(config)# reload</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# reload</pre>	<p>Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.</p> <p>Note The new size values are effective only upon the next reload after saving the copy running-config to startup-config.</p>
Step 7	<pre>switch(config)# hardware rate-limit erspan-egress</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# hardware rate-limit erspan-egress 1000 kbps</pre>	Specifies the ERSPAN egress rate-limit.
Step 8	<pre>switch(config)# show hardware rate-limit erspan-egress</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# show hardware rate-limit erspan-egress</pre>	Displays the configured ERSPAN egress rate-limit and also the permitted and dropped ERSPAN traffic statistics.
Step 9	<pre>switch(config)# clear hardware rate-limit erspan-egress statistics</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>switch(config)# clear hardware rate-limit erspan-egress statistics</pre>	Clears the currently permitted and dropped ERSPAN traffic statistics.

Example

The following example shows how to change the size of the e-VACL region:

```
switch(config)# hardware profile tcam region e-vacl 256
[SUCCESS] New tcam size will be applicable only at boot time.
You need to 'copy run start' and 'reload'
```

```
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
switch(config)# reload
WARNING: This command will reboot the system
Do you want to continue? (y/n) [n] y
```

The following example shows how to configure ERSPAN rate-limit:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# hardware rate-limit erspan-egress 1000 kbps
```

Configuring an Origin IP Address for ERSPAN Packets

You must configure an IP address to be used as the source of the ERSPAN traffic.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	monitor erspan origin ip-address <i>ip_address</i> Example: switch(config)# monitor erspan origin ip-address 192.0.2.1	Configures an IP address to be used as the source of the ERSPAN traffic.
Step 3	exit Example: switch(config-erspan-src)# exit	Updates the configuration and exits ERSPAN source session configuration mode.
Step 4	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Configuring Truncated ERSPAN

You can configure an MTU size for the ERSPAN traffic to reduce the amount of fabric or network bandwidth used in sending ERSPAN packets.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	enable Example: switch> enable	Enables privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.
Step 2	configure terminal Example: switch# configure terminal switch(config)#	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 3	monitor session <i>erspan_session_number</i> type {erspan-source local} Example: switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#	Defines an ERSPAN source session using the session ID and the session type, and places the command in ERSPAN monitor source session configuration mode. The span-session-number argument range is from 1 to 1024. The same session number cannot be used more than once.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>The session IDs for source sessions are in the same global ID space, so each session ID is globally unique for both session types.</p> <p>The session ID (configured by the span-session number argument) and the session type (configured by the erspan-source keyword) cannot be changed once entered. To change session ID or session type, use the no version of the command to remove the session and then re-create the session through the command with a new session ID or a new session type.</p>
Step 4	mtu <i>mtu-value</i> Example: <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# mtu 64</pre>	<p>Defines the maximum transmission unit (MTU) truncation size for ERSPAN packets. Valid values are from 64 to 1518.</p> <p>The default is no truncation enabled.</p>
Step 5	exit Example: <pre>switch(config-mon-erspan-src)# exit</pre>	<p>Updates the configuration and exits ERSPAN source session configuration mode.</p>
Step 6	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: <pre>switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config</pre>	<p>Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.</p>

Shutting Down or Activating an ERSPAN Session

You can shut down ERSPAN sessions to discontinue the copying of packets from sources to destinations. Because only a specific number of ERSPAN sessions can be running simultaneously, you can shut down a session to free hardware resources to enable another session. By default, ERSPAN sessions are created in the shut state.

You can enable ERSPAN sessions to activate the copying of packets from sources to destinations. To enable an ERSPAN session that is already enabled but operationally down, you must first shut it down and then enable it. You can shut down and enable the ERSPAN session states with either a global or monitor configuration mode command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	configuration terminal Example: <pre>switch# configuration terminal switch(config)#</pre>	<p>Enters global configuration mode.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	monitor session { <i>session-range</i> all } shut Example: <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 3 shut</pre>	Shuts down the specified ERSPAN sessions. The session range is from 1 to 48. By default, sessions are created in the shut state. Note <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Cisco Nexus 5000 and 5500 platforms, two sessions can run simultaneously. • In Cisco Nexus 5600 and 6000 platforms, 16 sessions can run simultaneously.
Step 3	no monitor session { <i>session-range</i> all } shut Example: <pre>switch(config)# no monitor session 3 shut</pre>	Resumes (enables) the specified ERSPAN sessions. The session range is from 1 to 48. By default, sessions are created in the shut state. Only two sessions can be running at a time. Note If a monitor session is enabled but its operational status is down, then to enable the session, you must first specify the monitor session shut command followed by the no monitor session shut command.
Step 4	monitor session <i>session-number</i> type erspan-source Example: <pre>switch(config)# monitor session 3 type erspan-source switch(config-erspan-src)#</pre>	Enters the monitor configuration mode for the ERSPAN source type. The new session configuration is added to the existing session configuration.
Step 5	monitor session <i>session-number</i> type erspan-destination Example: <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# monitor session 3 type erspan-destination</pre>	Enters the monitor configuration mode for the ERSPAN destination type.
Step 6	shut Example: <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# shut</pre>	Shuts down the ERSPAN session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.
Step 7	no shut Example: <pre>switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut</pre>	Enables the ERSPAN session. By default, the session is created in the shut state.
Step 8	(Optional) show monitor session all Example:	Displays the status of ERSPAN sessions.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	<code>switch(config-erspan-src)# show monitor session all</code>	
Step 9	(Optional) show running-config monitor Example: <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# show running-config monitor</code>	Displays the running ERSPAN configuration.
Step 10	(Optional) show startup-config monitor Example: <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# show startup-config monitor</code>	Displays the ERSPAN startup configuration.
Step 11	(Optional) copy running-config startup-config Example: <code>switch(config-erspan-src)# copy running-config startup-config</code>	Copies the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Verifying the ERSPAN Configuration

Use the following command to verify the ERSPAN configuration information:

Command	Purpose
<code>show monitor session {all session-number range session-range}</code>	Displays the ERSPAN session configuration.
<code>show running-config monitor</code>	Displays the running ERSPAN configuration.
<code>show startup-config monitor</code>	Displays the ERSPAN startup configuration.

Configuration Examples for ERSPAN

Configuration Example for an ERSPAN Source Session

The following example shows how to configure an ERSPAN source session:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# description source1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface ethernet 1/1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source vlan 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source vsan 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 192.0.2.2
switch(config-erspan-src)# erspan-id 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default
```

```

switch(config-erspan-src)# ip ttl 5
switch(config-erspan-src)# ip dscp 5
switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut
switch(config-erspan-src)# exit
switch(config)# copy running-config startup config

switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# description source1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source interface ethernet 1/1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source vlan 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# source vsan 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# destination ip 192.0.2.2
switch(config-erspan-src)# erspan-id 1
switch(config-erspan-src)# vrf default
switch(config-erspan-src)# ip ttl 5
switch(config-erspan-src)# ip dscp 5
switch(config-erspan-src)# no shut
switch(config-erspan-src)# exit
switch(config)# copy running-config startup config

```

Configuration Example for an IP Address as the Source for an ERSPAN Session

This example shows how to configure an IP address as the source for an ERSPAN session:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor erspan origin ip-address 192.0.2.1
switch(config)# exit
switch(config)# copy running-config startup config

```

Configuration Example for Truncated ERSPAN

This example shows how to configure truncated ERSPAN:

```

switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# monitor session 1 type erspan-source
switch(config-erspan-src)# mtu 64
switch(config-mon-erspan-src)# exit
switch(config)# copy running-config startup config

```

Additional References

Related Documents

Related Topic	Document Title
ERSPAN commands: complete command syntax, command modes, command history, defaults, usage guidelines, and examples	<i>Cisco Nexus NX-OS System Management Command Reference</i> for your platform.



CHAPTER 18

Configuring NTP

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Information About NTP, on page 201](#)
- [Licensing Requirements, on page 202](#)
- [Prerequisites for NTP, on page 203](#)
- [Guidelines and Limitations for NTP, on page 203](#)
- [Default Settings for NTP, on page 204](#)
- [Configuring NTP, on page 204](#)
- [Verifying the NTP Configuration, on page 213](#)
- [Configuration Examples for NTP, on page 214](#)

Information About NTP

Information About the NTP Server

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronizes the time of day among a set of distributed time servers and clients so that you can correlate events when you receive system logs and other time-specific events from multiple network devices. NTP uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) as its transport protocol.

All NTP communications use Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

An NTP server usually receives its time from an authoritative time source, such as a radio clock or an atomic clock attached to a time server, and then distributes this time across the network. NTP is extremely efficient; no more than one packet per minute is necessary to synchronize two machines to within a millisecond of each other.

NTP uses a stratum to describe the distance between a network device and an authoritative time source:

- A stratum 1 time server is directly attached to an authoritative time source (such as a radio or atomic clock or a GPS time source).
- A stratum 2 NTP server receives its time through NTP from a stratum 1 time server.

Before synchronizing, NTP compares the time reported by several network devices and does not synchronize with one that is significantly different, even if it is a stratum 1. Because Cisco NX-OS cannot connect to a radio or atomic clock and act as a stratum 1 server, we recommend that you use the public NTP servers

available on the Internet. If the network is isolated from the Internet, Cisco NX-OS allows you to configure the time as though it were synchronized through NTP, even though it was not.



Note You can create NTP peer relationships to designate the time-serving hosts that you want your network device to consider synchronizing with and to keep accurate time if a server failure occurs.

The time kept on a device is a critical resource, so we strongly recommend that you use the security features of NTP to avoid the accidental or malicious setting of incorrect time. Two mechanisms are available: an access list-based restriction scheme and an encrypted authentication mechanism.

NTP as Time Server

Other devices can configure it as a time server. You can also configure the device to act as an authoritative NTP server, enabling it to distribute time even when it is not synchronized to an outside time source.

Distributing NTP Using CFS

Cisco Fabric Services (CFS) distributes the local NTP configuration to all Cisco devices in the network.

After enabling CFS on your device, a network-wide lock is applied to NTP whenever an NTP configuration is started. After making the NTP configuration changes, you can discard or commit them.

In either case, the CFS lock is then released from the NTP application.

Clock Manager

Clocks are resources that need to be shared across different processes.

Multiple time synchronization protocols, such as NTP and Precision Time Protocol (PTP), might be running in the system.

High Availability

Stateless restarts are supported for NTP. After a reboot or a supervisor switchover, the running configuration is applied.

You can configure NTP peers to provide redundancy in case an NTP server fails.

Licensing Requirements

Product	License Requirement
Cisco NX-OS	NTP requires no license. Any feature not included in a license package is bundled with the Cisco NX-OS system images and is provided at no extra charge to you. For a complete explanation of the Cisco NX-OS licensing scheme, see the Cisco NX-OS Licensing Guide.

Prerequisites for NTP

NTP has the following prerequisites:

- To configure NTP, you must have connectivity to at least one server that is running NTP.

Guidelines and Limitations for NTP

NTP has the following configuration guidelines and limitations:

- The Cisco NX-OS software supports NTP version 4 (NTPv4).
- NTP server functionality is supported.
- You should have a peer association with another device only when you are sure that your clock is reliable (which means that you are a client of a reliable NTP server).
- A peer configured alone takes on the role of a server and should be used as a backup. If you have two servers, you can configure several devices to point to one server and the remaining devices to point to the other server. You can then configure a peer association between these two servers to create a more reliable NTP configuration.
- If you have only one server, you should configure all the devices as clients to that server.
- You can configure up to 64 NTP entities (servers and peers).
- If CFS is disabled for NTP, NTP does not distribute any configuration and does not accept a distribution from other devices in the network.
- After CFS distribution is enabled for NTP, the entry of an NTP configuration command locks the network for NTP configuration until a **commit** command is entered. During the lock, no changes can be made to the NTP configuration by any other device in the network except the device that initiated the lock.
- If you use CFS to distribute NTP, all devices in the network should have the same VRFs configured as you use for NTP.
- If you configure NTP in a VRF, ensure that the NTP server and peers can reach each other through the configured VRFs.
- You must manually distribute NTP authentication keys on the NTP server and Cisco NX-OS devices across the network.
- Use NTP broadcast or multicast associations when time accuracy and reliability requirements are modest, your network is localized, and the network has more than 20 clients. We recommend that you use NTP broadcast or multicast associations in networks that have limited bandwidth, system memory, or CPU resources.



Note Time accuracy is marginally reduced in NTP broadcast associations because information flows only one way.

Default Settings for NTP

The following table lists the default settings for NTP parameters:

Table 31: Default NTP Parameters

Parameters	Default
NTP	Enabled
NTP authentication	Disabled
NTP access	Enabled
NTP logging	Disabled

Configuring NTP

Enabling or Disabling NTP

Before you begin

Make sure that you are in the correct VDC. To change the VDC, use the **switchto vdc** command.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [no] feature ntp	Enables or disables NTP in VDC. NTP is enabled by default. Note NTP is enabled or disabled using the [no] ntp enable command.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show ntp status	Displays the status of the NTP application.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to disable NTP:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no feature ntp
```

Configuring the Device as an Authoritative NTP Server

You can configure the device to act as an authoritative NTP server, enabling it to distribute time even when it is not synchronized to an existing time server.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ntp master [<i>stratum</i>]	Configures the device as an authoritative NTP server. You can specify a different stratum level from which NTP clients get their time synchronized. The range is from 1 to 15.
Step 3	(Optional) show running-config ntp	Displays the NTP configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to configure the Cisco NX-OS device as an authoritative NTP server with a different stratum level:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp master 5
```

Configuring an NTP Server and Peer

You can configure an NTP server and peer.

Before you begin

Make sure that you know the IP address or DNS names of your NTP server and its peers.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [no] ntp server { <i>ip-address</i> <i>ipv6-address</i> <i>dns-name</i> } [key <i>key-id</i>] [maxpoll <i>max-poll</i>] [minpoll <i>min-poll</i>] [prefer] [use-vrf <i>vrf-name</i>]	Forms an association with a server. Use the key keyword to configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP server.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>The range for the <i>key-id</i> argument is from 1 to 65535.</p> <p>Use the maxpoll and minpoll keywords to configure the maximum and minimum intervals in which to poll a peer. The range for the <i>max-poll</i> and <i>min-poll</i> arguments is from 4 to 16 seconds, and the default values are 6 and 4, respectively.</p> <p>Use the prefer keyword to make this the preferred NTP server for the device.</p> <p>Use the use-vrf keyword to configure the NTP server to communicate over the specified VRF.</p> <p>The <i>vrf-name</i> argument can be default, management, or any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.</p> <p>Note If you configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP server, make sure that the key exists as a trusted key on the device.</p>
Step 3	<pre>switch(config)# [no] ntp peer {ip-address ipv6-address dns-name} [key key-id] [maxpoll max-poll] [minpoll min-poll] [prefer] [use-vrf vrf-name]</pre>	<p>Forms an association with a peer. You can specify multiple peer associations.</p> <p>Use the key keyword to configure a key to be used while communicating with the NTP peer. The range for the <i>key-id</i> argument is from 1 to 65535.</p> <p>Use the maxpoll and minpoll keywords to configure the maximum and minimum intervals in which to poll a peer. The range for the <i>max-poll</i> and <i>min-poll</i> arguments is from 4 to 17 seconds, and the default values are 6 and 4, respectively.</p> <p>Use the prefer keyword to make this the preferred NTP peer for the device.</p> <p>Use the use-vrf keyword to configure the NTP peer to communicate over the specified VRF. The <i>vrf-name</i> argument can be default, management, or any case-sensitive alphanumeric string up to 32 characters.</p>
Step 4	(Optional) <pre>switch(config)# show ntp peers</pre>	<p>Displays the configured server and peers.</p> <p>Note A domain name is resolved only when you have a DNS server configured.</p>

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

Configuring NTP Authentication

You can configure the device to authenticate the time sources to which the local clock is synchronized. When you enable NTP authentication, the device synchronizes to a time source only if the source carries one of the authentication keys specified by the **ntp trusted-key** command. The device drops any packets that fail the authentication check and prevents them from updating the local clock. NTP authentication is disabled by default.

Before you begin

Authentication for NTP servers and NTP peers is configured on a per-association basis using the key keyword on each **ntp server** and **ntp peer** command. Make sure that you configured all NTP server and peer associations with the authentication keys that you plan to specify in this procedure. Any **ntp server** or **ntp peer** commands that do not specify the key keyword will continue to operate without authentication.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [no] ntp authentication-key number md5 md5-string	Defines the authentication keys. The device does not synchronize to a time source unless the source has one of these authentication keys and the key number is specified by the ntp trusted-key number command.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show ntp authentication-keys	Displays the configured NTP authentication keys.
Step 4	switch(config)# [no] ntp trusted-key number	Specifies one or more keys (defined in Step 2) that a time source must provide in its NTP packets in order for the device to synchronize to it. The range for trusted keys is from 1 to 65535. This command provides protection against accidentally synchronizing the device to a time source that is not trusted.
Step 5	(Optional) switch(config)# show ntp trusted-keys	Displays the configured NTP trusted keys.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 6	switch(config)# [no] ntp authenticate	Enables or disables the NTP authentication feature. NTP authentication is disabled by default.
Step 7	(Optional) switch(config)# show ntp authentication-status	Displays the status of NTP authentication.
Step 8	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to configure the device to synchronize only to time sources that provide authentication key 42 in their NTP packets:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp authentication-key 42 md5 aNiceKey
switch(config)# ntp server 10.1.1.1 key 42
switch(config)# ntp trusted-key 42
switch(config)# ntp authenticate
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

Configuring NTP Access Restrictions

You can control access to NTP services by using access groups. Specifically, you can specify the types of requests that the device allows and the servers from which it accepts responses.

If you do not configure any access groups, NTP access is granted to all devices. If you configure any access groups, NTP access is granted only to the remote device whose source IP address passes the access list criteria.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [no] ntp access-group {match-all {peer serve serve-only query-only } access-list-name}}	<p>Creates or removes an access group to control NTP access and applies a basic IP access list.</p> <p>The access group options are scanned in the following order, from least restrictive to most restrictive. However, if NTP matches a deny ACL rule in a configured peer, ACL processing stops and does not continue to the next access group option.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The peer keyword enables the device to receive time requests and NTP control

	Command or Action	Purpose
		<p>queries and to synchronize itself to the servers specified in the access list.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The serve keyword enables the device to receive time requests and NTP control queries from the servers specified in the access list but not to synchronize itself to the specified servers. • The serve-only keyword enables the device to receive only time requests from servers specified in the access list. • The query-only keyword enables the device to receive only NTP control queries from the servers specified in the access list. • The match-all keyword enables the access group options to be scanned in the following order: peer, serve, serve-only, query-only.
Step 3	switch(config)# show ntp access-groups	(Optional) Displays the NTP access group configuration.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to configure the device to allow it to synchronize to a peer from access group "accesslist1":

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp access-group peer accesslist1
switch(config)# show ntp access-groups
Access List Type
-----
accesslist1 Peer
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

Configuring the NTP Source IP Address

NTP sets the source IP address for all NTP packets based on the address of the interface through which the NTP packets are sent. You can configure NTP to use a specific source IP address.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ntp source <i>ip-address</i>	Configures the source IP address for all NTP packets. The <i>ip-address</i> can be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.

Example

This example shows how to configure an NTP source IP address of 192.0.2.2.

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp source 192.0.2.2
```

Configuring the NTP Source Interface

You can configure NTP to use a specific interface.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	[no] ntp source-interface <i>interface</i>	Configures the source interface for all NTP packets. The following list contains the valid values for <i>interface</i> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ethernet • loopback • mgmt • port-channel • vlan

Example

This example shows how to configure the NTP source interface:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp source-interface ethernet
```

Configuring NTP Logging

You can configure NTP logging in order to generate system logs with significant NTP events. NTP logging is disabled by default.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [no] ntp logging	Enables or disables system logs to be generated with significant NTP events. NTP logging is disabled by default.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show ntp logging-status	Displays the NTP logging configuration status.
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

The following example shows how to enable NTP logging in order to generate system logs with significant NTP events:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp logging
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

Enabling CFS Distribution for NTP

You can enable CFS distribution for NTP in order to distribute the NTP configuration to other CFS-enabled devices.

Before you begin

Make sure that you have enabled CFS distribution for the device.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# [no] ntp distribute	Enables or disables the device to receive NTP configuration updates that are distributed through CFS.
Step 3	(Optional) switch(config)# show ntp status	Displays the NTP CFS distribution status.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	(Optional) switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config	Saves the change persistently through reboots and restarts by copying the running configuration to the startup configuration.

Example

This example shows how to enable the device to receive NTP configuration updates through CFS:

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp distribute
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Committing NTP Configuration Changes

When you commit the NTP configuration changes, the effective database is overwritten by the configuration changes in the pending database and all the devices in the network receive the same configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# ntp commit	Distributes the NTP configuration changes to all Cisco NX-OS devices in the network and releases the CFS lock. This command overwrites the effective database with the changes made to the pending database.

Discarding NTP Configuration Changes

After making the configuration changes, you can choose to discard the changes instead of committing them. If you discard the changes, Cisco NX-OS removes the pending database changes and releases the CFS lock.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# ntp abort	Discards the NTP configuration changes in the pending database and releases the CFS lock. Use this command on the device where you started the NTP configuration.

Releasing the CFS Session Lock

If you have performed an NTP configuration and have forgotten to release the lock by either committing or discarding the changes, you or another administrator can release the lock from any device in the network. This action also discards pending database changes.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	switch# configure terminal	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	switch(config)# clear ntp session	Discards the NTP configuration changes in the pending database and releases the CFS lock.

Verifying the NTP Configuration

Command	Purpose
show ntp access-groups	Displays the NTP access group configuration.
show ntp authentication-keys	Displays the configured NTP authentication keys.
show ntp authentication-status	Displays the status of NTP authentication.
show ntp internal	Displays internal NTP information.
show ntp logging-status	Displays the NTP logging status.
show ntp peer-status	Displays the status for all NTP servers and peers.
show ntp peer	Displays all the NTP peers.
show ntp pending	Displays the temporary CFS database for NTP.
show ntp pending-diff	Displays the difference between the pending CFS database and the current NTP configuration.
show ntp rts-update	Displays the RTS update status.
show ntp session status	Displays the NTP CFS distribution session information.
show ntp source	Displays the configured NTP source IP address.
show ntp source-interface	Displays the configured NTP source interface.
show ntp statistics {io local memory peer {ipaddr {ipv4-addr} name peer-name}}	Displays the NTP statistics.
show ntp status	Displays the NTP CFS distribution status.
show ntp trusted-keys	Displays the configured NTP trusted keys.

Command	Purpose
<code>show running-config ntp</code>	Displays NTP information.

Configuration Examples for NTP

Configuration Examples for NTP

This example shows how to configure an NTP server and peer, enable NTP authentication, enable NTP logging, and then save the startup configuration so that it is saved across reboots and restarts:

```
switch# configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
switch(config)# ntp server 192.0.2.105 key 42
switch(config)# ntp peer 192.0.2.105
switch(config)# show ntp peers
-----
Peer IP Address Serv/Peer
-----
192.0.2.100 Peer (configured)
192.0.2.105 Server (configured)
switch(config)# ntp authentication-key 42 md5 aNiceKey
switch(config)# show ntp authentication-keys
-----
Auth key MD5 String
-----
42 aNicekey
switch(config)# ntp trusted-key 42
switch(config)# show ntp trusted-keys
Trusted Keys:
42
switch(config)# ntp authenticate
switch(config)# show ntp authentication-status
Authentication enabled.
switch(config)# ntp logging
switch(config)# show ntp logging
NTP logging enabled.
switch(config)# copy running-config startup-config
[#####] 100%
switch(config)#
```

This example shows an NTP access group configuration with the following restrictions:

- Peer restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “peer-acl.”
- Serve restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “serve-acl.”
- Serve-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “serve-only-acl.”
- Query-only restrictions are applied to IP addresses that pass the criteria of the access list named “query-only-acl.”

```
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.1.1.1
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.2.2.2
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.3.3.3
```

```
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.4.4.4
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.5.5.5
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.6.6.6
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.7.7.7
switch(config)# ntp peer 10.8.8.8
switch(config)# ntp access-group peer peer-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group serve serve-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group serve-only serve-only-acl
switch(config)# ntp access-group query-only query-only-acl
switch(config)# ip access-list peer-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.1.1.1 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.8.8.8 any
switch(config)# ip access-list serve-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.4.4.4 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.5.5.5 any
switch(config)# ip access-list serve-only-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.6.6.6 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.7.7.7 any
switch(config)# ip access-list query-only-acl
switch(config-acl)# 10 permit ip host 10.2.2.2 any
switch(config-acl)# 20 permit ip host 10.3.3.3 any
```




INDEX

A

- ACL log [111](#)
 - match level [111](#)
- ACL logging [110](#)
 - applying to an interface [110](#)
- ACL logging cache [109](#)
 - configuring [109](#)
- activating sessions [184](#)
 - SPAN [184](#)
- adding show commands, alert groups [133](#)
 - smart call home [133](#)
- alert groups [121](#)
 - smart call home [121](#)
- associating alert groups [133](#)
 - smart call home [133](#)

C

- cache [109](#)
 - logging [109](#)
 - configuring [109](#)
- call home notifications [138, 139](#)
 - full-text format for syslog [138](#)
 - XML format for syslog [139](#)
- CFS [44, 52, 61, 66, 68](#)
 - clearing a locked session [52](#)
 - distributing NTP configurations [66](#)
 - distributing RADIUS configurations [66](#)
 - distributing Smart Call Home configurations [61](#)
 - distributing TACACS+ configurations [68](#)
 - guidelines [44](#)
 - limitations [44](#)
- changed information [1](#)
 - description [1](#)
- clearing [52](#)
 - locked sessions [52](#)
- clock management [71](#)
 - PTP [71](#)
- committing [212](#)
 - NTP configuration changes [212](#)
- configuration example [199](#)
 - ERSPAN [199](#)
 - source [199](#)

- configuration examples [200, 214](#)
 - ERSPAN sessions [200](#)
 - NTP [214](#)
 - truncated ERSPAN [200](#)
- configuration sync after reboot [23](#)
 - switch profiles [23](#)
- configuring [205, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211](#)
 - device as an authoritative NTP server [205](#)
 - NTP authentication [207, 208](#)
 - NTP logging [211](#)
 - NTP server and peer [205](#)
 - NTP source interface [210](#)
 - NTP source IP address [209](#)
- contact information, configuring [128](#)
 - smart call home [128](#)
- creating, deleting sessions [178](#)
 - SPAN [178](#)

D

- default parameters [191](#)
 - ERSPAN [191](#)
- default settings [96, 127, 204](#)
 - for NTP [204](#)
 - rollback [96](#)
 - smart call home [127](#)
- default SNMP settings [155](#)
- description, configuring [183](#)
 - SPAN [183](#)
- destination ports, characteristics [177](#)
 - SPAN [177](#)
- destination profile, creating [130](#)
 - smart call home [130](#)
- destination profile, modifying [131](#)
 - smart call home [131](#)
- destination profiles [120](#)
 - smart call home [120](#)
- destinations [177](#)
 - SPAN [177](#)
- device IDs [123](#)
 - call home format [123](#)
- diagnostics [97, 98, 100](#)
 - configuring [98](#)
 - default settings [100](#)
 - expansion modules [98](#)

- diagnostics (*continued*)
 - health monitoring 98
 - runtime 97
- disabling 116, 204
 - DOM logging 116
 - NTP 204
- discarding 212
 - NTP configuration changes 212
- displaying information 186
 - SPAN 186
- duplicate message throttling, disabling 136, 137
 - smart call home 136, 137

E

- e-mail details, configuring 134
 - smart call home 134
- e-mail notifications 119
 - smart call home 119
- enabling 116, 204, 211
 - CFS distribution for NTP 211
 - DOM logging 116
 - NTP 204
- ERSPAN 187, 188, 189, 191, 196, 199, 200
 - configuring source sessions 191
 - default parameters 191
 - guidelines and limitations 189
 - high availability 189
 - information about 187
 - licensing requirements 189
 - monitored traffic 188
 - prerequisites 189
 - related documents 200
 - sessions 189
 - multiple 189
 - source 199
 - configuration example 199
 - source sessions 191
 - configuring for ERSPAN 191
 - sources 188
 - truncated 188, 196, 200
 - configuration example 200
- ERSPAN packets 195
 - origin IP Address 195
- ERSPAN sessions 200
 - configuration example 200
- Ethernet destination port, configuring 178
 - SPAN 178
- example, local and peer sync 30
 - switch profiles 30
- executing a session 95

F

- facility messages logging 107
 - configuring 107
- feature groups, creating 89
 - RBAC 89
- feature history 168
 - SNMP 168
- Fibre Channel destination port, configuring 181
 - SPAN 181
- filtering SNMP requests 157

G

- GOLD diagnostics 97, 98
 - configuring 98
 - expansion modules 98
 - health monitoring 98
 - runtime 97
- guidelines and limitations 10, 72, 85, 102, 127, 155, 177, 203
 - for NTP 203
 - PTP 72
 - smart call home 127
 - SNMP 155
 - SPAN 177
 - switch profiles 10
 - system message logging 102
 - user accounts 85

H

- health monitoring diagnostics 98
 - information 98
- high availability 72
 - PTP 72
 - high availability 72

I

- IDs 123
 - serial IDs 123
- importing configurations 31
 - switch profiles 31
- information about 37, 202
 - clock manager 202
 - distributing NTP using CFS 202
 - module pre-provisioning 37
 - NTP as time server 202
- interfaces, configuring 75
 - PTP 75

L

- licensing [72, 102, 155](#)
 - PTP [72](#)
 - licensing [72](#)
 - SNMP [155](#)
 - system message logging [102](#)
- licensing requirements [189](#)
 - ERSPAN [189](#)
- linkDown notifications [165, 166](#)
- linkUp notifications [165, 166](#)
- locked session [52](#)
 - clearing [52](#)
- logging [107, 111](#)
 - ACL log match level [111](#)
 - facility messages [107](#)
 - module messages [107](#)
- logging cache [109](#)
 - configuring [109](#)

M

- message encryption [157](#)
 - SNMP [157](#)
- mgmt0 interface [110](#)
 - ACL logging [110](#)
- module messages logging [107](#)
 - configuring [107](#)
- module pre-provisioning [37](#)
 - information about [37](#)

N

- new and changed information [1](#)
- new information [1](#)
 - description [1](#)
- notification receivers [158](#)
 - SNMP [158](#)
- NTP configurations [66](#)
 - using CFS to distribute [66](#)

P

- password requirements [84](#)
- periodic inventory notifications, configuring [135](#)
 - smart call home [135](#)
- prerequisites [189, 203](#)
 - ERSPAN [189](#)
 - NTP [203](#)
- PTP [69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 75](#)
 - clock management [71](#)
 - NTP [71](#)
 - configuring globally [73](#)
 - default settings [72](#)
 - device types [70](#)

PTP (continued)

- guidelines and limitations [72](#)
- interface, configuring [75](#)
- overview [69](#)
- process [71](#)

R

- RADIUS configurations [66](#)
 - using CFS to distribute [66](#)
- rate limit, configuring [180](#)
 - SPAN [180](#)
- RBAC [79, 80, 81, 83, 85, 87, 89, 90, 91](#)
 - feature groups, creating [89](#)
 - rules [81](#)
 - user account restrictions [83](#)
 - user accounts, configuring [85](#)
 - user role interface policies, changing [89](#)
 - user role VLAN policies, changing [90](#)
 - user role VSAN policies, changing [91](#)
 - user roles [79](#)
 - user roles and rules, configuring [87](#)
 - verifying [91](#)
- registering [128](#)
 - smart call home [128](#)
- related documents [200](#)
 - ERSPAN [200](#)
- releasing [213](#)
 - CSF session lock [213](#)
- requirements [84](#)
 - user passwords [84](#)
- roles [79](#)
 - authentication [79](#)
- rollback [93, 96](#)
 - checkpoint copy [93](#)
 - creating a checkpoint copy [93](#)
 - default settings [96](#)
 - deleting a checkpoint file [93](#)
 - description [93](#)
 - example configuration [93](#)
 - guidelines [93](#)
 - high availability [93](#)
 - implementing a rollback [93](#)
 - limitations [93](#)
 - reverting to checkpoint file [93](#)
 - verifying configuration [96](#)
- rules [81](#)
 - RBAC [81](#)
- running config, displaying [27](#)
 - switch profiles [27](#)
- runtime diagnostics [97](#)
 - information [97](#)

S

- SAN admin user, configuring **86**
 - RBAC **86**
- SAN admin, user role **80**
- serial IDs **123**
 - description **123**
- server IDs **123**
 - description **123**
- session manager **93, 95, 96**
 - committing a session **95**
 - configuring an ACL session (example) **95**
 - description **93**
 - discarding a session **95**
 - guidelines **93**
 - limitations **93**
 - saving a session **95**
 - verifying configuration **96**
 - verifying the session **95**
- smart call home **119, 120, 121, 127, 128, 130, 131, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138**
 - adding show commands, alert groups **133**
 - alert groups **121**
 - associating alert groups **133**
 - contact information, configuring **128**
 - default settings **127**
 - description **119**
 - destination profile, creating **130**
 - destination profile, modifying **131**
 - destination profiles **120**
 - duplicate message throttling, disabling **136, 137**
 - e-mail details, configuring **134**
 - guidelines and limitations **127**
 - message format options **120**
 - periodic inventory notifications **135**
 - prerequisites **127**
 - registering **128**
 - testing the configuration **137**
 - verifying **138**
- Smart Call Home configurations **61**
 - using CFS to distribute **61**
- smart call home messages **120, 122**
 - configuring levels **122**
 - format options **120**
- SNMP **151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 161, 162, 168**
 - access groups **155**
 - configuring users **156**
 - default settings **155**
 - disabling **168**
 - feature history **168**
 - filtering requests **157**
 - functional overview **151**
 - group-based access **155**
 - guidelines and limitations **155**
 - inband access **162**
 - licensing **155**
- SNMP (*continued*)
 - message encryption **157**
 - notification receivers **158**
 - security model **153**
 - source interface **161**
 - trap notifications **152**
 - user synchronization with CLI **154**
 - user-based security **153**
 - SNMP **153**
 - version 3 security features **152**
- SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) **152**
 - versions **152**
- SNMP notification receivers **159**
 - configuring with VRFs **159**
- SNMP notifications **160**
 - filtering based on a VRF **160**
- SNMPv3 **152, 157**
 - assigning multiple roles **157**
 - security features **152**
- source IDs **123**
 - call home event format **123**
- source ports, characteristics **176**
 - SPAN **176**
- source ports, configuring **182**
 - SPAN **182**
- SPAN **175, 176, 177, 178, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 186**
 - activating sessions **184**
 - characteristics, source ports **176**
 - creating, deleting sessions **178**
 - description, configuring **183**
 - destination ports, characteristics **177**
 - destinations **177**
 - displaying information **186**
 - egress sources **175**
 - Ethernet destination port, configuring **178**
 - Fibre Channel destination port, configuring **181**
 - guidelines and limitations **177**
 - ingress sources **175**
 - rate limit, configuring **180**
 - source port channels, configuring **182**
 - source ports, configuring **182**
 - sources for monitoring **175**
 - VLANs, configuring **182**
 - VSANs, configuring **182**
- SPAN sources **175**
 - egress **175**
 - ingress **175**
- switch profile buffer, displaying **22, 30**
- switch profiles **10, 22, 23, 27, 28, 30, 31**
 - buffer, displaying **22, 30**
 - configuration sync after reboot **23**
 - example, local and peer sync **28, 30**
 - guidelines and limitations **10**
 - importing configurations **31**
 - running config, displaying **27**
 - verify and commit, displaying **28**

- Switched Port Analyzer [175](#)
- syslog [111](#)
 - ACL log match level [111](#)
 - configuring [111](#)
- system message logging [101, 102](#)
 - guidelines and limitations [102](#)
 - information about [101](#)
 - licensing [102](#)
- system message logging settings [102](#)
 - defaults [102](#)

T

- TACACS+ configurations [68](#)
 - using CFS to distribute [68](#)
- testing the configuration [137](#)
 - smart call home [137](#)
- trap notifications [152](#)

U

- user account restrictions [83](#)
 - RBAC [83](#)
- user accounts [84, 85, 91](#)
 - guidelines and limitations [85](#)
 - passwords [84](#)

- user accounts (*continued*)
 - verifying [91](#)
- user role interface policies, changing [89](#)
 - RBAC [89](#)
- user role VLAN policies, changing [90](#)
 - RBAC [90](#)
- user role VSAN policies, changing [91](#)
- user role, RBAC [80](#)
 - SAN admin [80](#)
- user roles [79](#)
 - RBAC [79](#)
- user roles and rules, creating [87](#)
 - RBAC [87](#)
- users [79](#)
 - description [79](#)

V

- verifying [91, 117, 138, 213](#)
 - DOM logging configuration [117](#)
 - NTP configuration [213](#)
 - RBAC [91](#)
 - smart call home [138](#)
 - user accounts [91](#)
- VRFs [159, 160](#)
 - configuring SNMP notification receivers with [159](#)
 - filtering SNMP notifications [160](#)

